

GIANTS
In English
Giants
كتاب إيه ما الامتحان بيقول

GIANTS
العملاق

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

English
& The Old Man And The Sea

GIANTS

English & The Old Man And The Sea

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

الصف الأول الثانوي

40

كتاب العمالقة

الصف الاول الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

Contents

Unit 7 The Daily Beat of Different Lands

Unit 8 Building Bridges with Words

Unit 9 Building a Better Future

Review (C)

Unit 10 Shopping and Money

Unit 11 Food & Culture

Unit 12 People and Places

Review (D)

أسرة إعداد كُتب العمالقة

لقد اجتهدنا...
فإن أحسننا فمن الله
وإن أسأنا فمنا ومن الشيطان
اللهم علماً ينتفع به



Unit 7

The Daily Beat of Different Lands

Learning Outcomes

Reading

language

Listening

Writing

Speaking

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in texts about daily routines and cultural habits.
- Interpret vocabulary related to routines, habits, and cultural practices.
- Analyze short texts to infer meaning about cultural values, social norms, and lifestyle.
- Distinguish between the past simple and the past perfect in context.
- Rewrite sentences to convey the same meaning using tense transformations (e.g., after, by the time, "before").
- Listen for specific information in conversations about daily routines and healthy habits.
- Identify key details such as frequency, duration, and purpose of actions.
- Write clear and coherent paragraphs in a personal journal about personal routines, habits, and experiences.
- Reflect on personal growth, habits, or volunteering experiences in a structured written format.
- Discuss personal routines, cultural habits, and healthy lifestyles using guided questions.
- Express opinions and make comparisons between personal experiences and those of others.

The Daily Beat of Different Lands

- 1 Routines Around the World
2 Changing Habits for a Healthier Life



Key Vocabulary

routine (n)(adj) روتين / نظام يومي / نمطي	single (adj)(n) واحد / مفرد / أعزب / فردي	balanced (adj) متوازن
punctuality (n) الإلتزام / الإنضباط	energetic (adj) نشيط / مفعم بالحياة	motivate (v) يحفز / يشجع / يدفع
schedule (n/v) جدول / برنامج / يحدد	fit (v)(adj) يلائم / يناسب / ملائم / مناسب	motivated (adj) محفز / مندفع / متحمس
respect (n/v) احترام / يحترم	fitness (n) اللياقة البدنية	stay motivated يبقى متحمساً
bow (n/v) ينحني / إنحناء	refresh (v) ينعش / يجدد	differ (v) يختلف
last up to (v) يستمر حتى / يدوم حتى	refreshing (adj) منعش	difference (n) فرق / اختلاف / تباين
lifestyle (n) أسلوب حياة	junk food (n) وجبات سريعة / طعام غير صحي	make a difference يحدث فرقاً / تأثيراً

Main Vocabulary

mental (adj) ذهني / عقلي	siesta (n) قيلولة	delicious (adj) لذيذ
physical (adj) بدني / جسدي / مادي	bento (n) وجبة يابانية معبأة	daily routine (n) الروتين اليومي
tradition (n) تقليد / عادة متوارثة	chorei (n) اجتماع صغير صباحاً في اليابان	ignore (v) يتجاهل
habit (n) عادة (شخصية)	understanding (n) فهم / تفاهم	daily beat (n) الإيقاع اليومي
awesome (adj) رائع / مذهل	beat (n/v) نبضة / إيقاع / يهزم / يضرب	stress (n) ضغط / التوتر / إجهاد
remind (v) يذكر	track (n/v) مسار / يتتبع / أثر	gather (v) يجمع / يجتمع
connected (adj) متصل / مرتبط / موصول	record (n/v) يسجل / سجل / تسجيل	variety (n) تنوع / اختلاف
include (v) يشمل / يتضمن	community (n) مجتمع	relaxing (adj) باعث على الاسترخاء
provide (v) يوفر / يقدم	fixed (adj) ثابت / غير متغير	culture (n) ثقافة
neatly (adv) بشكل مرتب	light (adj) خفيف	reopen (v) يعيد الفتح / يعيد افتتاح
serve (v) يقدم / يخدم	enthusiasm (n) حماس / شغف / حيوية	social (adj) اجتماعي
outdoors (adv) في الهواء الطلق	event (n) حدث / مناسبة	break (n/v) يكسر / انقطاع / استراحة
politely (adv) بآداب / بلطف	teamwork (n) العمل الجماعي	climate (n) مناخ
unique (adj) فريد / مميز / يونيك	mood (n) مزاج / حالة نفسية	similarity (n) تشابه / شبه

Collocations

take evening walks يتمشى مساءً	stay organized يحافظ على التنظيم
take turns يتناوب / يأخذ الأدوار	use a fitness app يستخدم تطبيق لياقة بدنية
reduce screen time يقلل وقت استخدام الشاشات	develop healthy habits يطور عادات صحية
feel so refreshing يشعر بالانتعاش الشديد	improve mood and energy يحسن المزاج والطاقة
follow a schedule يتبع جدول / يلتزم بجدول	plan workouts يخطط للتمارين الرياضية
build a balanced lifestyle يبني نمط حياة متوازن	track steps يتتبع عدد الخطوات
build teamwork and respect يبني روح العمل الجماعي والاحترام	manage stress يتحكم في التوتر

Expressions & Prepositions

physical and mental health الصحة الجسدية والذهنية	instead of بدلاً من
show respect for يظهر الاحترام لـ	focus on يركز على
stay healthy physically يحافظ على صحته البدنية	depend on يعتمد على
spend time outdoors يقضي وقتاً في الهواء الطلق	end with ينتهي بـ
spend time with family يقضي وقتاً مع العائلة	give up يستسلم / يتخلى عن
set goals يحدد أهدافاً	on time في الموعد

Definitions

energetic	نشيط / مفعم بالحيوية	► full of energy and ready to be active
fitness	اللياقة البدنية	► being healthy, strong, and able to exercise
junk food	وجبات سريعة	► food that is unhealthy and high in fat, salt, or sugar
stay motivated	يبقى متحمساً	► to keep working hard and not give up
make a difference	يحدث فرقاً	► to have a positive effect on people or your community
routine	روتين / نظام يومي	► a regular and fixed way of doing things
punctuality	الالتزام / الانضباط	► the habit of doing something at the correct or planned time
schedule	جدول / برنامج	► a plan that lists events or tasks and the times they are supposed to happen
last up to	يستمر حتى	► to continue to exist or be effective until a certain time
single	واحد / مفرد / أعزب / فردي	► only one; not married; not shared

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
routine	روتين / نظام يومي	habit, practice, schedule, pattern	change, variety, novelty
bow	ينحني / انحناء	bend, nod, lean, gesture	straighten up, rise, stand straight
energetic	نشيط / مفعم بالحيوية	active, lively, enthusiastic, vigorous	lazy, tired, inactive
punctuality	الالتزام / الانضباط	discipline, regularity, timeliness, promptness	lateness, delay, disorder
fitness	اللياقة البدنية	health, strength, well-being	weakness, unfitness, illness
last up	يستمر	continue, go on, endure	end, stop, finish
single	واحد / مفرد / أعزب / فردي	one, individual, unmarried, sole	married, multiple, several
physical	بدني / جسدي / مادي	bodily, tangible	mental, intellectual, psychological
schedule	جدول / برنامج	timetable, plan, program, calendar	disorder, chaos, confusion
motivated	متحفّز / لديه دافع	determined, inspired, encouraged	unmotivated, indifferent, discouraged
respect	إحترام / يحترم	admiration, honor, regard	disrespect, disregard, dishonor
include	يشمل / يتضمن	involve, comprise, cover, contain	exclude, omit, remove, eliminate

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
be punctual	punctuality	punctual
respect	respect	respected
vary	variety	various
fit	fitness	fit
balance	balance	balanced
differ	difference	different
motivate	motivation	motivated



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

routine	روتين / عمل متكرر	⇒	red tape	الروتين الحكومي / التعقيدات الإدارية (بيروقراطية)
motivated	محفّز / متحمّس	⇒	motivating	محفّز / مشجّع
remind	يذكر	⇒	remember	يتذكر
track	مسار / يتتبع	⇒	trick	خدعة / يخدع
everyday (adj)	يومي / اعتيادي	⇒	every day (adv)	كل يوم
punctuality	الالتزام بالوقت	⇒	commitment	التزام بالمسؤوليات
social	اجتماعي / متعلق بالمجتمع	⇒	sociable	ودود / يحب الاختلاط بالناس
health	صحة	⇒	healthy	صحي
own	يملك	⇒	owe	يدين
climate	المناخ (فترة طويلة)	⇒	weather	الطقس / حالة الجو (فترة قصيرة)
lose	يفقد / يضيع (شيء)	⇒	miss	يفوت / يغيب عن شيء / يفقد (شخص / وسيلة مواصلات)
affect (v)	يؤثر	⇒	effect (n)	أثر / نتيجة / تأثير

routine, habit, custom, tradition & traditional

routine	روتين / نظام يومي	► Breaking the daily routine can improve creativity.
habit	عادة شخصية	► Reading before sleeping is a healthy habit .
custom	عادة / عرف / ممارسة (مجتمعية)	► It is a local custom to greet guests warmly.
tradition	تقليد متوارث	► It is a tradition to celebrate this festival every year.
traditional	تقليدي	► She prefers traditional methods of teaching.

outdoor, outdoors, indoor & indoors

outdoor (adj)	خارجي	► They organized an outdoor party in the garden.
outdoors (adv)	في الخارج / في الهواء الطلق	► It is healthier to exercise outdoors .
indoor (adj)	داخلي	► The school has an indoor swimming pool.
indoors (adv)	في الداخل	► Because of the storm, everyone stayed indoors .

include, contain & consist of

include	يشمل / يتضمن (جزءاً من الكل)	► The price includes taxes and service charges.
contain	يحتوي على (داخل شيء مادي أو معنوي)	► This article contains useful information.
consist of	يتكون من (الكل - الأجزاء)	► The team consists of ten skilled players.

help

help + someone + inf.	► Regular exercise helps you stay healthy.
help + object + to + inf.	► This app helps people to save time.
help + inf. / to + inf. بدون مفعول	► This medicine helps (to) reduce pain.
help + object + with + noun	► He helped me with my homework.



"Routines Around the World"

Read the following text. Is there one fixed routine all over the world?

Every culture ⁽¹⁾ has its own daily routine ⁽²⁾. While our routines may look different, they all help people stay organized, ⁽³⁾ healthy, and connected. The way people plan their days often depends on climate, lifestyle, ⁽⁴⁾ and tradition ⁽⁵⁾.

In Japan, mornings start early. Many workers and students take the train before 7 a.m. They bow ⁽⁶⁾ politely ⁽⁷⁾ to each other and begin the day with a short meeting called chorei, which builds teamwork ⁽⁸⁾ and respect ⁽⁹⁾. Punctuality ⁽¹⁰⁾ is very important, so people try not to be late. Lunch is often rice, fish, and vegetables served neatly ⁽¹¹⁾ in lunch boxes called bento. After a long day, evenings usually end with a relaxing hot bath, a moment to refresh ⁽¹²⁾ body and mind before sleeping.



In France, students usually start school around 8:30 a.m. They often enjoy a light ⁽¹³⁾ breakfast of bread and jam or croissants with hot chocolate. Lessons continue until midday, when students have a long lunch break often lasting up to ⁽¹⁴⁾ two hours. Many schools provide healthy meals that include meat, vegetables, cheese, and fruit. After school ends around 4:30 p.m., students might go to clubs, play sports, or spend time with family. Dinner is a social event where everyone gathers to share food and talk about their day. French families usually eat dinner around 7:30 or 8 p.m.

In Spain, people follow a very different schedule. ⁽¹⁵⁾ Many shops close in the afternoon for a short rest called siesta and reopen in the evening. Dinner is eaten late around 9 or 10 p.m. and families often take evening walks, enjoying music or conversation ⁽¹⁶⁾ outdoors.

Even though daily routines differ, they all show respect for time, family, and health. Understanding these habits reminds us that there is no single ⁽¹⁷⁾ right routine—only what best fits the people and the place.

(1) ثقافة

(2) نظام يومي

(3) منظم

(4) أسلوب حياة

(5) عرف / تقليد

(6) ينحني

(7) بآداب

(8) عمل جماعي

(9) احترام / يحترم

(10) الالتزام / الانضباط

(11) بشكل أنيق

(12) ينعش / يجدد

(13) خفيف

(14) يستمر حتى

(15) جدول

(16) محادثة

(17) واحد / مفرد



Listening



Nader
Omar

Hey Omar, you look great! Have you been exercising lately?
Thanks! Yes, I've started going to the gym three times a week and stopped eating junk food ⁽¹⁾. It hasn't been easy, but I've already lost almost five kilos since March.

Nader

That's awesome ⁽²⁾! I've been waking up early and walking before work for the past three weeks. It really helps me feel more energetic ⁽³⁾.
Good for you! My brother has also started using a fitness ⁽⁴⁾ app to track ⁽⁵⁾ his steps every day.

Omar

Nader

I've heard those apps help people stay motivated ⁽⁶⁾. I'm using one to record ⁽⁷⁾ my meals, and I've learned to eat more balanced ⁽⁸⁾ food. It seems everyone is trying to live healthier these days.

Omar

Nader

True! We've been spending less time online and more time outside. It feels so refreshing ⁽⁹⁾!

Omar

I agree. Small changes can make a big difference ⁽¹⁰⁾.

(1) طعام غير صحي

(2) رائع

(3) نشيط

(4) لياقة

(5) يتابع

(6) متحمس

(7) يسجل

(8) متوازن

(9) منعش

(10) فرق



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Good is important if you want to arrive on time for school or work. SB
 a. punctual b. punctuality c. confession d. delay
2. In Japan, people often to show respect when greeting someone. SB
 a. annoy b. blame c. insult d. bow
3. Drinking water and sleeping well help you stay during the day. SB
 a. power b. energy c. energetic d. motivating
4. To, set clear goals and reward yourself when you reach them. SB
 a. stay connected b. stay safe c. stay calm d. stay motivated
5. This lesson can to forty minutes. SB
 a. last up b. depend on c. last for d. last with
6. Every student reviews a timetable for the week. SB
 a. married b. sign c. single d. signal
7. Many countries follow a daily to help people stay organized. SB
 a. mess b. chaos c. respect d. schedule
8. If you want to improve your, you should exercise three times a week. SB
 a. weakness b. fatness c. fitness d. energetic
9. Eating too much is unhealthy and can make you feel tired. SB
 a. nutritious food b. junk food c. vegetables d. natural food
10. Helping others, even in small ways, can make a/an in your community. SB
 a. difference b. favour c. operation d. well
11. They bow politely to each other to show SB
 a. confusion b. disappointment c. exhaustion d. respect
12. Following a fixed daily helps students manage their time effectively.
 a. event b. celebration c. routine d. tradition
13. The teacher used a short revision to the students' memory before the test.
 a. refresh b. deplete c. exhaust d. weaken
14. Personal trainers design programs to improve strength, stamina, and overall
 a. wealth b. tiredness c. weakness d. fitness
15. Repeated lateness shows a clear lack of and responsibility.
 a. dishonesty b. punctuality c. punctual d. punctually
16. The manager examined every detail of the project carefully.
 a. married b. fit c. single d. signal
17. Teachers must encourage and keep students throughout the year.
 a. motivated b. discouraged c. disappointed d. indifferent
18. A lifestyle reduces stress and improves overall health.
 a. confusing b. biased c. random d. balanced
19. The campaign needed a/an leader to motivate volunteers.
 a. nervous b. energetic c. weak d. careless
20. Drinking cold water on a hot summer day is very
 a. stressful b. refresh c. refreshing d. dull
21. Athletes must remain throughout the competition.
 a. fit b. risk c. spirit d. duty
22. Teenagers should adopt a balanced and productive to achieve success.
 a. chaos b. lifestyle c. disorder d. tradition

23. There is a big between indoor and outdoor activities.
 a. differ b. different c. differently d. difference
24. He remained despite facing many difficulties.
 a. motivate b. motivated c. motivating d. motivation
25. A/An is a regular and fixed way of doing things every day.
 a. surprise b. choice c. accident d. routine
26. A is a plan that lists events or tasks and their times.
 a. story b. schedule c. decision d. message
27. means keeping yourself encouraged to achieve your goals.
 a. Feel bored b. Lose interest c. Stop trying d. Stay motivated
28. is the habit of doing something at the correct or planned time.
 a. Delay b. Carelessness c. Punctuality d. Laziness
29. He maintained a/an lifestyle by managing his work and leisure time.
 a. balanced b. unfair c. unstable d. unbalanced



Exercise 01

Main Vocabulary

30. In Japan, the morning routine often includes a short meeting called to build teamwork. SB R 3
 a. bento b. chorei c. kimono d. namaste
31. It is important to the values passed down from our ancestors. SB R 3
 a. ignore b. appreciate c. destroy d. forget
32. Stress and anxiety can have negative effects on well-being.
 a. material b. bodily c. mental d. physically
33. Nutrition plays an important role in maintaining good fitness.
 a. mental b. physical c. intellectual d. emotional
34. Good can help you achieve your goals and improve your life.
 a. disorders b. customs c. habits d. costumes
35. The app allows users to stay with their families.
 a. offline b. disconnected c. private d. connected
36. Celebrating national holidays is a long-standing passed through generations.
 a. habit b. tradition c. red tape d. rule
37. The student wrote his answers and clearly.
 a. neatly b. strangely c. carelessly d. poorly
38. The students watched a/an science experiment that amazed everyone.
 a. boring b. weak c. dull d. awesome
39. The waiter the guests politely and efficiently.
 a. serves b. ignores c. confuses d. punishes
40. The student asked the teacher to explain the lesson again.
 a. physically b. politely c. mentally d. locally
41. She her brother of his important appointment.
 a. reminded b. ignored c. replaced d. remembered
42. This museum displays historical artifacts.
 a. crowded b. unique c. common d. modern
43. Mutual helps reduce conflicts between classmates.
 a. doubt b. argument c. boredom d. understanding

44. She tried to fear by thinking positively.
 a. spread b. join c. beat d. follow
45. She carried a bag that was easy to lift.
 a. heavy b. light c. full d. painful
46. The task required close among members.
 a. delay b. argument c. teamwork d. conflict
47. In hot countries, people often take a after lunch to rest.
 a. bento b. shift c. chorei d. siesta
48. The fitness app helps users to their steps, calories, and activity daily.
 a. truck b. track c. trail d. trick



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

SB

49. Helping others, even in small ways, can a difference in your community.
 a. make b. take c. do d. give
50. Doctors recommend patients to evening walks to improve their health regularly.
 a. give b. take c. do d. make
51. Smoking is a dangerous that can harm long-term health.
 a. custom b. tradition c. traditional d. habit
52. Doctors advise people to walk daily.
 a. outdoors b. outdoor c. indoor d. indoors
53. The school trip will visits to museums and historical sites.
 a. consist b. contain c. exclude d. include
54. The teacher helped the students the problem easily.
 a. solving b. solve c. to solving d. solved
55. The teacher always the students about the homework before the weekend.
 a. remembers b. ignores c. reminds d. neglects
56. Wearing casual clothes is part of his routine at work.
 a. everyday b. every day c. sometimes d. unusual
57. The teacher uses a of methods to explain the lesson clearly.
 a. vary b. various c. variously d. variety
58. In group activities, students should turns reading aloud to maintain fairness.
 a. do b. take c. make d. give
59. Experts suggest we screen time gradually to improve mental and physical health.
 a. raise b. increase c. maintain d. reduce
60. Keeping a clean workspace helps anyone to organized and focused daily.
 a. make b. remind c. stay d. give
61. relationships play an important role in mental health.
 a. Social b. Socially c. Sociable d. Society
62. Doctors advise everyone to a balanced lifestyle by eating healthy and exercising.
 a. build b. do c. ignore d. take
63. To save money, he cooked meals at home instead eating out every evening.
 a. off b. on c. of d. by
64. Athletes must focus training and nutrition to perform well in competitions.
 a. at b. in c. of d. on

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

65. Omar felt energetic after he started his new exercise routine. The synonym of "energetic" is **SB R 3**
 a. active b. lazy c. lively d. tired e. sleepy
66. The teacher emphasized that punctuality is a key trait of a successful student. The synonym of "punctuality" is **SB R 3**
 a. lateness b. promptness c. timeliness d. delay e. laziness
67. Regular exercise improves your fitness and strength. The synonym of "fitness" is
 a. illness b. weakness c. health d. pain e. well-being
68. He follows a strict routine every morning before going to school. The synonym of "routine" is
 a. change b. habit c. surprise d. pattern e. accident
69. The problem was emotional rather than physical. The antonym of "physical" is
 a. real b. mental c. intellectual d. bodily e. solid
70. Punctuality is essential for success at work. The synonym of "punctuality" is
 a. discipline b. disorder c. delay d. chaos e. regularity
71. The plan does not include unnecessary details. The antonym of "include" is
 a. add b. involve c. contain d. exclude e. eliminate
72. Lack of punctuality often causes problems at school. The antonym of "punctuality" is
 a. order b. system c. lateness d. discipline e. delay
73. The task was done by a single worker, not many. The antonym of "single" is
 a. multiple b. individual c. sole d. several e. one
74. Physical objects can be touched and seen easily. The synonym of "physical" is
 a. abstract b. mental c. logical d. tangible e. bodily
75. He checked his schedule before attending the meeting. The synonym of "schedule" is
 a. mess b. confusion c. timetable d. chaos e. plan
76. The motivated student studies hard every day. The synonym of "motivated" is
 a. encouraged b. weak c. confused d. tired e. determined
77. Lack of respect can cause serious conflicts. The antonym of "respect" is
 a. value b. dishonor c. disrespect d. regard e. praise
78. When the actor finished his performance, he decided to to the audience politely.
 a. bend b. straighten c. resist d. bow e. ignore

يعبر عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي / أحداث قصة بالماضي / عادة في الماضي.

Past Simple

الماضي البسيط

التكوين

Formation

النفى

Negative

السؤال

Question

المجهول

Passive

V + ed

التصريف الثاني للأفعال الشاذة أو

watched - visited - went - saw

didn't + inf. or → never + الثاني

Did + فاعل + inf. ?

was / were + P.P.

Key

Words

الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday
- last
- ago
- in the past
- in سنة سابقة
- once = one day
- How long ago (did - was)
- just now
- the other day
- We **were** in Alexandria two months **ago**.
- I **was** busy doing my homework **yesterday**.

I wish
It is time
I'd rather

الفاعل

V + ed

أو شاذ تصريف 2

ماضي غير حقيقي

- I'd rather Ali **visited** Paris.
- It is time they **went** home from school.
- مع أظرف التكرار للتعبير عن العادات في الماضي
(always - usually - often - never...)
- When I **was** young, I **always slept** early.
- My father **usually went** to work by train when he was young.

اعتاد على (ماضي)

- used to + inf.

النفى

- didn't use to + inf.

- never used to + inf.

السؤال

- Did you use to.....?

نستخدم used to + inf. للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي ولا تحدث الآن.

★ He **used to** sleep late.

= He **no longer** sleeps late.

= He **doesn't** sleep late **anymore**.

نستخدم used to + ing or n. [am - is - are - get (s) - become (s)] للتعبير عن عادة في المضارع.

★ Mai **is used to sleeping** early.

نستخدم used to + ing or n (was - were - got - became) للتعبير عن عادة كانت مألوفة في الماضي.

★ Jana **was used to eating** healthy food.

ولكن لاحظ أن (is - are) used to قد تأتي بمعنى (يستخدم لكي) ويليهما inf. أو for + ing

★ The wind **is used to sail** ships.

★ Cotton **is used for making** clothes.

جملة التعقيب بعد but now تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم do - does إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس

V. be أما إذا كان V. be نستخدم am - is - are

★ Ali **used to be** active but now he **isn't**.

★ Nada **used to get** up early but now she **doesn't**.

Past Perfect

الماضي التام

الإثبات

Affirmation

الفاعل + had + P.P.

❖ Jana **had prepared** dinner.

المجهول

Passive

مفعول + had + been + P.P.

❖ Dinner **had been prepared** by Jana.

Uses - الاستخدامات

① يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي تام والثاني ماضي بسيط وغالباً مع روابط مثل:

after = before that

as soon as . once

because - since - as

when

ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام +

- ★ After she **had cooked**, she **set** the table.
- ★ He **watched** TV; **before that** he **had done** his homework.

❖ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (after - since - when) يأتي بعدهم (V + ing) ولكن (Once) بعدها (P.P)

- ★ After **reading** the novel, he watched TV.

❖ يمكننا أن نبدأ الجملة بـ Having + P.P

Having + P.P.

or

Having been + P.P.

(Passive)

- ★ After the police **had arrested** the thief, he was taken to prison.

= **Having arrested** the thief, he was taken to prison.

(في المعلوم)

= **Arresting** the thief, the police took him to prison.

(اختصار المعلوم)

- ★ After the thief **had been arrested**, he was taken to prison.

= **Having been arrested**, the thief was taken to prison.

(في المجهول)

= **Arrested**, the thief was taken to prison.

(اختصار المجهول)

② يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي وغالباً مع روابط مثل:

before = after that

by the time

when

ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط +

- ★ Before he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.
- ★ He **had done** his homework; **after that** he **watched** TV.

❖ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (before) يأتي بعدهم (V + ing)

- ★ Before **watching** TV, he **had read** the novel.

③ يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث لم يتم حتى وقع حدث آخر وغالباً مع روابط مثل:

ماضي بسيط منفى +

until

till

ماضي تام +

- ★ I **didn't leave** home until my mother **had come**.
- ★ I **wasn't promoted** until I **had increased** my target.

❖ لاحظ أننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل until - till (حسب المعنى المقصود):

- ★ I **waited** my friend until he **had finished** his tasks.

٤ يستخدم الماضي التام مع بعض الظروف التي تعني (لم يكبد... حتي) مثل:

no sooner	... than
scarcely	... when
hardly	... when

- ★ They **had no sooner finished** studying **than** they **went** to bed.
★ We **had hardly finished** painting our new house **when** we **moved** into it.

٤ إذا بدأت بهم الجملة يأتي بعدهم صيغة سؤال:

No sooner	... than
Scarcely	... when
Hardly	... when

- ★ **No sooner had** they **finished** studying **than** they **went** to bed.
★ **Scarcely had** they **finished** studying **when** they **went** to bed.

٥ يستخدم الماضي التام مع التعبيرات الآتية في حالة وجود كلمة أو جملة تدل على الماضي:

I wish	+ ماضي تام + فاعل +
I'd rather	(تحتوي الجملة علي ما يدل علي ماضي)
It was time	

- ★ I wish Toka **had studied** well last year. ★ I would rather he **had come** yesterday.
٥ يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقت معين في الماضي وغالباً مع (by = before - until)

by	+ ماضي تام + مدة سابقة +
until	

- ★ By 2022, we **had published** our first book. ★ Until midnight, I **hadn't finished** my studies.
٥ يمكن أن يأتي الحدثين ماضي بسيط مع الروابط الزمنية في حالة عدم وجود فاصل زمني.
★ After he **saw** the accident, he **fainted**. ★ I **called** him before he **entered**.

٥ يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات الدالة على المضارع إذا وجد ما يدل علي الماضي:

already / just / ever / never / yet / for / since

- ★ She **had just got** home when I **phoned** her. ★ I **met** Mai. I **hadn't met** her since 2020.

٥ لاحظ التركيب التالي:

It was only when	+ ماضي بسيط + that + ماضي تام +
It was not until	

- ★ **It was only when** I had done my homework **that** I went to bed.

٥ يمكننا القول أن غالباً ما يكون الحدث بعد الأفعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام لأنها غالباً يأتي بعدهم الحدث الأول

(remembered - found out - discovered - realized - knew)

- ★ I **went** home and **discovered** that the thief **had stolen** my money.

Important Notes

٤ لاحظ: عندما تبدأ الجملة بعبارة ظرفية سلبية، فإن ذلك يؤدي إلى انعكاس بين الفاعل والفعل المساعد (صيغة سؤال)

(Never - Rarely - Seldom - No sooner - Hardly - Barely - Scarcely - Not only)

- ★ **Never had** she **tasted** such delicious food before.

٤ لاحظ: الفعل المساعد علي الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية (الجملة الثانية) إذا بدأت الجملة بكلمات مثل:

(Not until / Not since / Only when / Only after / Only if / Only by)

- ★ **Not until** they had finished their studies **did they** feel prepared for the exam.
★ **Not since** last summer **have they** visited the beach.

الماضي التام المستمر
Past Perfect Continuous

الإثبات

Affirmation

الفاعل + had been + V + ing

❖ They **had been studying** English all night.

المجهول

Passive

مفعول + had + been (being) + P.P.

❖ English **had been (being) studied** all night.

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

الكلمات الدالة (كل الروابط التي تأتي مع الماضي التام بالإضافة إلى)

- all... (وقت) طوال ▶ He was tired because he **had been working** on the farm all day.
for لمدة ▶ When we visited him in Canada, he **had been living** there for six months.
since منذ ▶ He was covered in paint. He **had been painting** the room since we left.

Uses

الاستخدامات

❖ يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر.

- ★ After Jana **had been studying** English from seven to nine, she **slept**.

❖ يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر لإعطاء تفسيرات للمواقف الماضية.

- ★ Why were your clothes dirty? - I **had been repairing** my car since this morning.



حالات لا يمكننا استخدام الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط.

❶ هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً وهي أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة.

know - believe - want - understand - wish - like - dislike - love - prefer - enjoy - realize

- ★ We **were** good friends. We **had known** each other for 10 years.

❷ لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة في حدوثها.

break down - stop - close - open - finish

- ★ She **was** late for the meeting because her car **had broken** down.

❸ إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط.

- ★ When I **met** Ali, he **had finished** typing 3 reports.



Exercise 04

Language Level 1

- By the time we arrived at the cinema, the movie
a. starts b. has started c. had started d. is starting SB R 3
- My grandfather walk five kilometers every morning when he was young.
a. is used to b. used to c. uses to d. was used SB R 3
- After he his lunch, he went back to work.
a. eats b. is eating c. has eaten d. had eaten SB R 3
- When I arrived at the station, the train
a. had left b. has left c. leaves d. is leaving SB

5. She her homework before she went to the party. **SB**
 a. finishes b. finished c. had finished d. was finishing
6. My father smoke, but he quit ten years ago. **SB R 3**
 a. used to b. is used to c. uses to d. was used to
7. They in Cairo for two years before they moved. **SB**
 a. lived b. had lived c. live d. are living
8. They lunch before the trip. **SB**
 a. hasn't had b. hadn't c. didn't had d. hadn't had
9. He had finished the project before the deadline **SB**
 a. has passed b. had passed c. passes d. passed
10. When they had eaten, they TV. **SB**
 a. have watched b. had watched c. watched d. watching
11. Ayman to a new apartment a year ago. **SB**
 a. moves b. moved c. has moved d. had moved
12. By the time we arrived, the train **SB**
 a. had left b. left c. has left d. was leaving
13. A new school in our city last month. **أينوب أسبوت ٢٠٢٢ سوحا ٢٠٢٤ بليس ٢٠٢٤ الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤**
 a. built b. was built c. was building d. is built
14. The shoes were very clean because I an hour cleaning them. **روكسي ٢٠٢٤**
 a. have spent b. was spending c. had spent d. spending
15. When Huda was a child, she always cartoons. **الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤**
 a. had watched b. watched c. watches d. watch
16. I shrimp until I had visited Alexandria. **شريين ٢٠٢٤**
 a. had never eaten b. have never eaten c. never ate d. was never eating
17. My father used to smoke but now he **بليس ٢٠٢٢**
 a. isn't smoking b. doesn't smoke c. didn't smoke d. wasn't smoking
18. I didn't leave my office until I my work. **ادكو ٢٠٢٢ الجزيرة ٢٠٢٤**
 a. finish b. finishes c. had finished d. was finished
19. After my lunch, I went out to play with my friends. **سوحا ٢٠٢٢ البلينا ٢٠٢٢ منقلوط ٢٠٢٤**
 a. having b. had c. had had d. have had



Exercise 04 Language Level 2

20. I was exhausted because I all day for the exam. **SB R 3**
 a. have studied b. study c. had been studying d. am studying
21. Until the teacher it, I hadn't understood the lesson. **SB R 3**
 a. explains b. explained c. has explained d. is explaining
22. done his homework, he went for a walk. **ميت ساسيل ٢٠٢٤ القوصية أسبوت ٢٠٢٢ البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٤**
 a. Have b. Had c. Having d. To have
23. He to sit down until he had apologized. **الفره ٢٠٢٤ الحسينية ٢٠٢٤ طامية ٢٠٢٤**
 a. wasn't allowed b. doesn't allow c. hadn't allowed d. didn't allow
24. The lady taken to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night. **العريش ٢٠٢٤ الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤**
 a. is b. will be c. had been d. was

25. stealing the old man's money, the thief had already been arrested. ٢٠٢٤ ههيا
 a. Having b. After c. Before that d. Before
26. Having the good news, I hurried to tell my family. ٢٠٢٤ أخميم
 a. receiving b. received c. had receiving d. have receiving
27. No sooner the loud noise than we went there quickly. ٢٠٢٤ الاسكندرية
 a. we heard b. we had heard c. had we heard d. we have heard
28. Before for London, he had paid off his debts. ٢٠٢٤ طنطا
 a. left b. leaving c. had left d. leave
29. The injured woman to hospital before she died. ٢٠٢٤ روض الفرع
 a. takes b. has taken c. will take d. had been taken
30. had I saved a lot of money when I bought a car.
 a. No sooner b. After c. Before d. Scarcely
31. I bought a new car, but before that, I many sites to choose a good model. ٢٠٢٤ ملوي
 a. searched b. had searched c. search d. would search
32. My father go to work by car, but now he does. ٢٠٢٤ المراغة
 a. used to b. is used to c. isn't used to d. didn't use to
33. had he left home than he heard an explosion. ٢٠٢٤ أبو تشت
 a. Hardly b. No sooner c. Before d. After
34. It wasn't I had seen the film that I slept. ٢٠٢٤ منيا القمح
 a. after b. before c. when d. until
35. By 2019, this flyover bridge ٢٠٢٤ روكسى
 a. finished b. had finished c. had been finished d. had been finishing
36. By the time lunch , the guests had arrived. ٢٠٢٤ دمياط
 a. was prepared b. had been prepared c. prepared d. was preparing
37. Having , the car looked a new one. ٢٠٢٢ قنا
 a. repaired b. been repaired c. being repaired d. repairing
38. I enjoyed reading the novel you me. Thanks a lot! ٢٠٢٤ شين الكوم
 a. had lent b. have been lent c. hadn't lent d. was lent
39. As soon as I arrived home, I realised that I my keys. ٢٠٢٤ منوف
 a. had been losing b. have lost c. was losing d. had lost
40. It was the first time that I Aswan. ٢٠٢٤ العدة
 a. visited b. has visited c. had visited d. was visiting
41. It was when I had seen him coming that I realized he returned home. ٢٠٢٤ الحسينية
 a. that b. only c. hardly d. sooner
42. When I reached home, I discovered that my car ٢٠٢٤ العدة
 a. stole b. had stolen c. had been stolen d. stealing
43. I had a shower. After that, I to bed. ٢٠٢٢ الغربية
 a. had gone b. gone c. went d. go
44. I realised I my handbag in the supermarket when I returned home. ٤٣٨
 a. had forgotten b. was forgetting c. have forgotten d. will forget

45. It was only when I Spanish that I travelled to Spain.

الدنجات ٢٠٢٢

- a. learned b. had learned c. have learned d. has learned

46. As soon as I met my friend, I him about the latest news.

قلبن ٢٠٢٤

- a. had told b. told c. was told d. will tell

47. They able to come because they were so busy.

- a. aren't b. didn't c. wasn't d. weren't



Exercise Ph Language Level 3

48. Jane read her aunt's letter that to her the day before.

قوة كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

- a. had been sent b. had sent c. has been sent d. was sent

49. When I visited Faten, she lunch, so I didn't find any food left.

٤٣٣

- a. will have b. was having c. has just had d. had just had

50. She no replies until one day, she got a letter.

أسوان ٢٠٢٢

- a. receives b. had received c. has received d. hadn't received

51. They felt bad about selling the house as they it for more than sixty years.

الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤

- a. were owning b. had been owning c. have owned d. had owned

52. Unfortunately, Taher's leg as soon as the match started.

نقادة ٢٠٢٤

- a. broke b. has broken c. had broken d. had been broken

53. She didn't come on time she had had a car crash.

شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤

- a. until b. since c. while d. in case

54. No sooner the crash than we rushed to the spot.

غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٤

- a. did we hear b. we had heard c. we did hear d. had we hear

55. I would rather you this book last week. It was cheap.

العمرائية ٢٠٢٤

- a. had bought b. to buy c. bought d. will buy

56. I nobody until Ali had arrived.

قلبن ٢٠٢٤

- a. met b. didn't meet c. hadn't met d. wasn't met

57. As soon as he reached home, he to bed. He was very tired.

البدرشين ٢٠٢٤

- a. was gone b. was going c. had gone d. went

58. I found the wallet which lost last Sunday.

الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

- a. had b. was being c. have d. had been

59. First, I my work. Then I met my friends in the club.

٤٣٣

- a. will finish b. finished c. have finished d. had finished

60. Egypt qualified for the world football cup finals in 2018. It since 1990.

- a. hadn't qualified b. hasn't qualified c. didn't qualify d. won't qualify

61. The woman who in the forest was found dead two days ago.

- a. had disappeared b. has disappeared
c. was disappearing d. had been disappeared

62. herself alone, Heba decided to read a science fiction book.

- a. Found b. Finding c. Finds d. Founding

63. by the rude cashier, Karima complained to the manager.

- a. Annoyed b. Annoys c. Annoy d. Annoying

64. After , my room looked nice.
 a. painting b. had painted c. being painted d. had been painted
65. He in Alex for two years; and when his mother died, he moved to Cairo.
 a. has lived b. was living c. has been living d. had been living
66. Not until the 1990s
 a. the cell phone was invented b. was the cell phone invented
 c. did the cell phone invent d. the cell phone invented
67. Never tasted such delicious food before.
 a. had she b. she had c. she did d. did she
68. Which sentence is structurally correct?
 a. No sooner had we arrived at the cinema than the lights went out.
 b. We no sooner had arrived at the cinema than the lights went out.
 c. We had no sooner arrived at the cinema when the lights went out.
 d. No sooner we had arrived at the cinema when the lights went out.
69. Which of the following is structurally correct?
 a. Before I left home, I have prepared my bag.
 b. When I went to the station, the train had left, so I missed the train.
 c. As soon as Yasser came home, mother had prepared lunch.
 d. I won't go out till I had done my work.

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- I finished my homework, then I watched TV. (after) SB
- She visited the museum. Before that, she read about its history. (had) SB
- They left the house and then the storm started. (by the time) SB
- We ate lunch and then we continued our trip. (after) SB
- I wasn't in the habit of waking up early, but now I do. (didn't use to) SB R3
- Sarah was very tired because she exercised at the gym for two hours. (had been) SB R3
- I had a habit of biting my nails when I was a child, but I stopped long ago. (used to) SB R3
- He cleaned the house, then his guests arrived. (By the time) SB R3
- I didn't recognize the artifacts until the guide explained their history. (Only after) SB R3
- Omar played football every weekend in the past, but he doesn't anymore. (used to) SB R3
- I didn't see the Grand Egyptian Museum until last week. (Before) SB R3
- First, the students finished their lunch. Then, they started their lessons. (After) SB R3
- By the time I got to the station, the train had left. (No sooner)
- He left the office after meeting the boss. (until)
- The passengers stood up to leave the moment the plane landed. (no sooner)
- I finished my homework, then I played football. (It wasn't until ...)
- She called her mother the moment she arrived home. (Hardly ...)
- Once he had locked the door, he went to bed. (Having ...)
- After she had checked the engine, she wrote a report. (was)
- Ahmed finished his homework, then he watched TV. (only)

The Daily Beat of Different Lands

- 3 The Cultural Identity
4 My Identity and the Grand Egyptian Museum
5 My Personal Journal



Key Vocabulary

proud (adj)	فخور	identity (n)	الهوية	routine (n)(adj)	روتين / نظام يومي / نمطي
treasure (n/v)	كنز / شيء ثمين / يقدر	value (n/v)	قيمة / يُقدّر	tradition (n)	تقليد / عادة متوارثة
artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية / أعمال يدوية	roots (n)	جذور / أصول	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
heritage (n)	تراث	unity (adj)	وحدة / تماسك / اتحاد	custom (n)	عادة / عرف
shape (n/v)	شكل / هيئة / يكون / يشكل	unique (n)	فريد / مميز	celebration (n)	احتفال
appreciate (v)	يقدّر / يثمن	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى / مهم	kimonos (n)	الكيمونو (زي ياباني تقليدي)

Main Vocabulary

achievement (n)	إنجاز	cultural (adj)	ثقافي	reflect (v)	يعكس / يظهر / يدل على
ancestors (n)	الأجداد / الأسلاف	destination (n)	وجهة / مقصد	reflection (n)	انعكاس / تأمل / تفكير
personal (adj)	شخصي	connection (n)	صلة / ارتباط / علاقة	tone (n)	نبرة / صوت / أسلوب
strengthen (v)	يقوي / يعزز	ancient (adj)	قديم / عريق	beauty (n)	جمال
experience (n/v)	خبرة / تجربة / يمرّ به	globalized (adj)	معولم / عالمي	celebrate (v)	يحتفل / يكرم / يحيي
history (n)	تاريخ	apartment (n)	شقة	neighbour (n)	جار
influence (n/v)	تأثير / يؤثر	grandparent (n)	جد / جدة	behavior (n)	سلوك / تصرف
including (adj)	بما في ذلك / متضمن	explore (v)	يستكشف	follow (v)	يتبع
replace (v)	يستبدل	challenge (n/v)	تحدي / يتحدى	colorful (adj)	ملون / زاهي
belief (n)	معتقد / اعتقاد	festival (n)	مهرجان / احتفال	satisfaction (n)	رضا
collection (n)	مجموعة / تجميع	journal (n)	مجلة / يوميات / مذكرات	valuable (adj)	ذو قيمة
preserve (v)	يحافظ على	practice (n)	ممارسة	attentive (adj)	منتبه / مهتم
separate (v/adj)	منفصل / مستقل / يفصل	deadline (n)	الموعد النهائي	respectful (adj)	محترم
generation (n)	جيل	memories (n)	ذكريات	sense of identity	إحساس بالهوية

Collocations

share experiences	يتبادل الخبرات / يشارك التجارب	feel proud of / to	يشعر بالفخر به / أن
shape your identity	يشكل هويتك	feel connected to	يشعر بالانتماء إلى / يشعر بالارتباط بـ
show cultural identity	يظهر الهوية الثقافية	keep memories alive	يبقي الذكريات حاضرة
preserve cultural traditions	يحافظ على التقاليد الثقافية	explore the artifacts	يستكشف القطع الأثرية
make progress	يحقق تقدماً	have an effect on	يكون له تأثير على

Expressions & Prepositions

be proud of (to+inf.) = take pride in	يفخر بـ	write (jot) down	يدون / يكتب بسرعة
connect daily live with	يربط الحياة اليومية بـ	work on a project	يعمل على (يطور) مشروع
the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	focus (concentrate) on	يركّز على
become (be) part of	يصبح / يكون جزءاً من	grow up	ينشأ / يكبر
historical sites	مواقع تاريخية	show off	يتفاخر / يتباهى
a 17-year-old boy	صبي / فتى يبلغ من العمر ١٧ عاماً	bring together	يجمع / يوحد / يلتقي

Unit 7



Definitions

heritage	التراث	▶ the culture, history, and traditions passed from the past
treasure	كنز / شيء ثمين	▶ something very special or valuable
appreciate	يُقدّر / يثمن	▶ to understand the value and importance of something
identity	الهوية	▶ who you are and what makes you different
proud	فخور	▶ feeling pleasure and satisfaction because you, or people connected with you, have done or got something good.
artifacts	قطع أثرية	▶ objects made or used long ago, often found in museums
shape	يشكل / يؤثر في	▶ to help form or influence something
roots	الجذور / الأصول	▶ the origins or background of a person, family, or culture
unity	الوحدة / التماسك	▶ the state of being joined together or in agreement
unique	فريد / مميز	▶ being the only one of its kind; unlike anything else

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
proud	فخور	pleased, honored, satisfied	ashamed, embarrassed
artifacts	قطع أثرية / أعمال يدوية	antiquities, objects, treasures	modern items, contemporary objects
heritage	التراث	legacy, inheritance	modernity, innovation, novelty
shape	شكل / هيئة / يشكل	form, figure, outline, configuration	disfigurement, deform, distort
appreciate	يقدّر / يثمن	value, respect, admire, acknowledge	ignore, devalue, neglect
unity	وحدة / تماسك / اتحاد	harmony, oneness, solidarity	division, disunity, separation
unique	فريد / مميز	special, distinctive, exceptional	common, ordinary, usual
roots	جذور / أصول	origins, beginnings, sources, base	branches, outcomes, results
ancestors	الأجداد / الأسلاف	forefathers, predecessors, elders	descendants, successors
influence	تأثير / يؤثر	impact, effect, affect	insignificance, ineffectiveness
reflect	عكس / يظهر / يدل على	show, indicate, express, mirror	hide, conceal, obscure, ignore
identity	الهوية	individuality, uniqueness, personality	anonymity, unknown

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appreciate	يقدّر / يثمن	appreciation	تقدير / شكر	appreciable	جدير بالتقدير
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر / فعال
unify	يوحد	unity	وحدة / تماسك / اتحاد	unified	موحد / متماسك
identify	يحدد / يعرف	identity	الهوية	identifiable	يمكن تحديده
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	إحتفالي
believe	يعتقد	belief	معتقد / اعتقاد	believable	معقول / جدير بالتصديق
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

proud	فخور	⇒	pride	فخر
identity	الهوية	⇒	identify	يحدد / يعرف
tradition	تقليد متوارث	⇒	traditional	تقليدي
influence	يؤثر	⇒	influential	مؤثر / فعال
believe	يعتقد	⇒	belief	معتقد / اعتقاد
value	قيمة / يُقدّر	⇒	valuable	ثمين / ذو قيمة / مفيد
custom	عادة (خاصة بمجموعة)	⇒	habit	عادة (خاصة بفرد)
appreciate	يقدر (يعجب بـ)	⇒	estimate	يقيم / يقدر / يثمن
roots	الجزور / الأصول	⇒	roads	طرق / شوارع / مسارات
challenge (n/v)	تحدي / يتحدى	⇒	challenging	صعب / يمثل تحدياً
historic	تاريخي (ذو أهمية تاريخية لأنه قديم أو مؤثر)	⇒	historical	تاريخي (مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ / الماضي)
explore	يستكشف (شيء / مكان جديد / الفضاء)	⇒	discover	يكشف شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف أو مخفي
custom	عادة / عرف	⇒	costume	زي / ملابس خاصة بمناسبة أو دور معين

experience & experiment

experience (n)	خبرة (لا تعد)	She has ten years of teaching experience .
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية (تعد)	Traveling abroad was an unforgettable experience .
experience (v)	يجرب / يمر بـ	She experienced a lot of challenges during her trip.
experiment	تجربة علمية	He designed a new experiment to study plant growth.

site, destination, location & position

site	موقع أثري / بناء / موقع على الإنترنت	Abu Simble is the site of two temples in Aswan.
location	موقع / موقع تصوير	What is the exact location of the ship?
position	موقع متحرك / مكانة اجتماعية	My uncle had a high position in society.
destination	مكان الوصول (الوجهة)	Aswan will be my next destination .

make

make + object + inf.		Studying history makes him appreciate his heritage.
make + object + adj.	يجعل	The sad movie made her unhappy .
be made + to + inf.	يجبر	He was made to apologize for his mistake.

respect, respected, respectable & respectful

respect	يحترم / احترام	You should always show respect to your teachers.
respected	محترم / يحظى بالاحترام	He is a highly respected scientist.
respectable	محترم / لائق اجتماعياً أو أخلاقياً	He comes from a respectable family.
respectful	محترم / مؤثر في التعامل	She gave a respectful bow to the elders.

"The Egyptian Museum"

Read the following text

Why do you think many young Egyptians have shared their museum experiences online?

Hi everyone! I'm Omar, a 17-year-old from Egypt, and I've been so **proud** ⁽¹⁾ recently because our country has finally opened the Grand Egyptian Museum near the Pyramids of Giza! For years, people have been talking about this project, and now it's real.

Visiting the museum has become part of my **routine** ⁽²⁾. Every weekend, I go with my family to **explore** the **artifacts** ⁽³⁾ and learn more about Egypt's past. I have already seen thousands of **treasures** ⁽⁴⁾, including King Tutankhamun's **collection** ⁽⁵⁾. Seeing these artifacts has helped Omar understand his **identity** ⁽⁶⁾ as an Egyptian because they connect him to the **achievements** ⁽⁷⁾, **beliefs** ⁽⁸⁾, and **traditions** ⁽⁹⁾ of his **ancestors** ⁽¹⁰⁾. By learning how ancient Egyptians lived and what they **valued** ⁽¹¹⁾, he can see how their culture has **influenced** ⁽¹²⁾ modern Egypt.

This makes him **appreciate** ⁽¹³⁾ his heritage more and feel proud to be part of a long and rich history.

Many young Egyptians have been sharing their museum **experiences** ⁽¹⁴⁾ online. We have felt proud to connect our daily lives with history. This museum has reminded us that learning about our **heritage** ⁽¹⁵⁾ can become a **meaningful** ⁽¹⁶⁾ part of our routines and **shapes** ⁽¹⁷⁾ who we are today.



- (١) فخور
- (٢) روتين
- (٣) قطع أثرية
- (٤) كنوز
- (٥) مجموعة
- (٦) هوية
- (٧) إنجازات
- (٨) معتقدات
- (٩) تقاليد
- (١٠) أسلاف
- (١١) قيمة
- (١٢) تأثير
- (١٣) يقدر / يثمن
- (١٤) تجارب
- (١٥) تراث
- (١٦) ذو معنى
- (١٧) يشكل



Listening



Cultural identity is **shaped** ⁽¹⁾ by the language we speak, food we enjoy, and the **traditions** ⁽²⁾ we follow. Each country expresses its identity in a **unique** ⁽³⁾ way. In Italy, people **celebrated** ⁽⁴⁾ family through **traditional** ⁽⁵⁾ pasta dishes that their grandparents had cooked for many years, keeping **memories** ⁽⁶⁾ alive at every meal.

In Egypt, traditional music was played during weddings, and families had shared stories that **strengthened** ⁽⁷⁾ the **connection** ⁽⁸⁾ between **generations** ⁽⁹⁾. In Japan, people wore kimonos during **festivals** ⁽¹⁰⁾, and they had learned early in life to **respect** ⁽¹¹⁾ nature through ancient customs that guided their **behavior** ⁽¹²⁾. In India, colorful celebrations like Holi **brought** families and **neighbours** ⁽¹³⁾ together and reminded them of the importance of unity. Today, young people around the world try to understand their cultural roots while also living in modern societies. By **appreciating** ⁽¹⁴⁾ these traditions, they discover who they are and how their culture adds **beauty** ⁽¹⁵⁾ to the world.

- (١) يشكل
- (٢) تقاليد
- (٣) فريد / مميز
- (٤) مشهور
- (٥) تقليدي
- (٦) ذكريات
- (٧) تقوى / تعزیز
- (٨) صلة / ارتباط
- (٩) جيل
- (١٠) مهرجانات
- (١١) احترام
- (١٢) سلوك
- (١٣) الجيران
- (١٤) يقدر
- (١٥) جمال



Exercise Ph

Key Vocabulary

1. A/An is an object made by humans, typically of cultural or historical interest. **SB R 3**
 a. artifact b. treasure c. gadget d. routine
2. Many people in Spain follow a different, eating dinner as late as 10 p.m. **SB R 3**
 a. artifact b. schedule c. emergency d. dynasty
3. We the culture of our ancestors. **SB**
 a. destroy b. ruin c. appreciate d. spoil
4. Visiting the museum has become part of Omar's **SB**
 a. costume b. customary c. red tape d. routine
5. Seeing the helps Omar understand his identity as an Egyptian. **SB**
 a. treasures b. treason c. obstacles d. challenging
6. The museum teaches visitors about Egypt's **SB**
 a. industry b. cultural c. culture d. agriculture
7. Thousands of ancient are displayed in the museum. **SB**
 a. roots b. routines c. identities d. artifacts
8. Parents are always of their children's achievements and milestones.
 a. proud b. disappointed c. upset d. anxious
9. Ancient coins are considered a valuable for historians and collectors.
 a. weakness b. trash c. waste d. treasure
10. Archaeologists carefully handled the newly discovered to avoid damage.
 a. furniture b. artifacts c. clothes d. decorations
11. Good leaders can the future of their communities effectively.
 a. shape b. neglect c. ruin d. ignore
12. The UNESCO works to protect the world's cultural for future generations.
 a. innovation b. environment c. heritage d. economy
13. It is important to cultural differences in a globalized world.
 a. neglect b. appreciate c. avoid d. reject
14. Understanding your family can help you appreciate your traditions.
 a. neighbors b. branches c. leaves d. roots
15. Parents teach children to honesty and respect in all situations.
 a. dismiss b. ignore c. value d. forget
16. National helps citizens feel connected to their country's history.
 a. identity b. habit c. citizenship d. talent
17. Her painting style is completely and unlike any other artist's work.
 a. regular b. ordinary c. common d. unique
18. Leaders emphasized the importance of during challenging times.
 a. competition b. unity c. separation d. argument
19. Many cultures preserve their through music, dance, and food.
 a. habit b. tradition c. schedule d. plan
20. She follows a strict exercise to maintain physical and mental health.
 a. tradition b. habit c. routine d. hobby
21. The speech was so it inspired many students to take action.
 a. trivial b. boring c. meaningless d. meaningful

22. Festivals are a form of cultural enjoyed by all generations.
 a. celebration b. discussion c. planning d. agreement
23. During the festival, women wore colorful representing traditional Japanese culture.
 a. values b. routs c. kimonos d. roots
24. In some countries, it is a to remove shoes before entering a home.
 a. habit b. custom c. rule d. costume
25. are the origins or background of a person or culture.
 a. Branches b. Roads c. Routes d. Roots
26. They wore outfits during the cultural festival to honor their heritage.
 a. traditional b. modern c. casual d. tradition
27. means the culture, history, and traditions passed from the past.
 a. Treasure b. Progress c. Heritage d. Tradition
28. means to understand the value and importance of something.
 a. Ignore b. Shape c. Reject d. Appreciate
29. refers to who you are and what makes you different from others.
 a. Heritage b. Identity c. Duty d. Habit
30. describes feeling pleasure and satisfaction because of achievements.
 a. Ashamed b. Guilty c. Nervous d. Proud



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

31. Vitamins and a healthy diet help your immune system.
 a. diminish b. weaken c. strengthen d. reduce
32. The older often have different habits than the younger one.
 a. generation b. custom c. destination d. peer
33. There is a clear between exercise and good health.
 a. separation b. connection c. detachment d. disconnection
34. The airplane finally arrived at its after a long flight.
 a. separation b. source c. departure d. destination
35. The letter had a formal that showed respect.
 a. mood b. dullness c. tone d. indifference
36. Every year, Egyptians national holidays with parades and festivals.
 a. ignore b. celebrate c. neglect d. condemn
37. Being towards others builds trust and friendship.
 a. disrespectful b. rude c. impolite d. respectful
38. Winning the national science competition was a proud for the students.
 a. achievement b. failure c. mistake d. challenging
39. Visiting the homeland of our helps strengthen cultural identity.
 a. colleagues b. peers c. ancestors d. neighbors
40. She keeps a diary to record her daily thoughts and feelings.
 a. public b. personal c. official d. common
41. Social media can public opinion on important issues.
 a. influence b. avoid c. neglect d. ignore

42. The book discusses many topics, climate change and renewable energy.
 a. omitting b. excluding c. including d. avoiding
43. Modern technology can often outdated machines in factories.
 a. replace b. retain c. remain d. ignore
44. He has a firm in honesty and hard work.
 a. confusion b. doubt c. rejection d. belief
45. The museum displays a unique of ancient coins from different civilizations.
 a. herd b. pile c. belief d. collection
46. Museums aim to historical artifacts for future generations.
 a. abandon b. damage c. preserve d. neglect
47. It is wise to work and personal life to reduce stress.
 a. combine b. merge c. separate d. unite
48. The museum organizes events to promote local art and music.
 a. technical b. cultural c. physical d. scientific
49. Writing in a journal provides a quiet on personal thoughts and experiences.
 a. reflection b. repetition c. distraction d. confusion
50. The museum exhibits artifacts dating back thousands of years.
 a. modern b. ancient c. contemporary d. recent
51. A culture often blends traditions from different nations.
 a. limited b. globalized c. national d. rural
52. He showed great of the challenges faced by his team.
 a. understanding b. confusion c. misunderstanding d. doubt
53. Overcoming obstacles in life is a common for everyone.
 a. artifact b. collection c. custom d. challenge
54. Cultural often include food, dance, and traditional performances.
 a. treasures b. meetings c. lectures d. festivals
55. Team members worked hard to complete the task before the strict
 a. limit b. goal c. deadline d. milestone
56. The museum's included paintings, sculptures, and historical artifacts.
 a. display b. hiding c. cover d. belief
57. A good leader has a of responsibility toward their team.
 a. celebration b. sense c. collection d. attitude
58. Being towards classmates creates a positive learning environment.
 a. careless b. rude c. impolite d. respectful



Exercise

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

59. Employers value candidates with prior work
 a. experiment b. experience c. experiments d. experiences
60. The strict teacher the students their homework carefully.
 a. made / do b. made / to do c. makes / doing d. makes / to do
61. Social media enables people to experiences quickly with friends and family.
 a. give b. make c. do d. share
62. Challenges in life help to your identity and strengthen personal values.
 a. shape b. do c. take d. make
63. Regular exercise enables athletes to progress in strength and endurance gradually.
 a. do b. make c. take d. give

64. Volunteers often proud to help communities improve their daily lives.
a. take b. make c. do d. feel
65. Traveling abroad helps teenagers feel to global cultures and traditions.
a. connect b. connecting c. connected d. connection
66. Teachers' feedback can an effect on students' motivation and performance.
a. have b. make c. do d. take
67. Volunteers work community projects to create a positive impact on society.
a. in b. on c. as d. out
68. Students are advised to write important notes during lectures to revise for exams.
a. up b. on c. of d. down

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

69. The Grand Egyptian Museum features unique artifacts from ancient history. The antonym of "unique" is SB R 3
a. rare b. special c. common d. ordinary e. singular
70. The depth of the bow in Japan reflects a high level of respect. The synonym of "reflects" is SB R 3
a. hides b. shows c. expresses d. ignores e. avoids
71. He was proud of his achievements at school. The synonym of "proud" is
a. worried b. guilty c. angry d. honored e. pleased
72. The museum displays ancient artifacts from different civilizations. The synonym of "artifacts" is
a. machines b. tools c. antiquities d. devices e. treasures
73. Heritage connects people to their history and traditions. The synonym of "heritage" is
a. lifestyle b. legacy c. tradition d. inheritance e. habit
74. People appreciate kindness and honesty. The synonym of "appreciate" is
a. ignore b. forget c. value d. criticize e. respect
75. Unity brings people together, unlike separation. The antonym of "unity" is
a. division b. solidarity c. peace d. separation e. harmony
76. Ancestors are remembered, while successors build the future. The antonym of "ancestors" is
a. forefathers b. descendants c. leaders d. successors e. elders
77. Teachers have a strong influence on students' behavior. The synonym of "influence" is
a. effect b. insignificance c. impact d. chance e. weakness
78. Culture plays a major role in shaping identity. The synonym of "identity" is
a. habit b. individuality c. status d. role e. personality

Personal Journal

المذكرة الشخصية

Definition of Personal Journal

- ★ A private notebook or digital space where you write about:

✍ دفتر خاص أو مساحة رقمية خاصة تكتب فيها عن:

your daily experiences

how you have been feeling lately

a problem you have been facing

a habit you have started or changed

a lesson you learned

a goal you achieved

تجاربك اليومية

كيف كنت تشعر مؤخراً

مشكلة كنت تواجهها

عادة بدأتها أو غيرتها

درس تعلمته

هدف حققته

- ★ It's not like an essay it's informal and honest.

✍ إنها ليست مثل المقال، بل هي غير رسمية وصادقة.

- ★ You can start with "Dear Journal", or simply write your thoughts.

✍ يمكنك البدء بـ "مذكراتي العزيزة"، أو ببساطة كتابة أفكارك.

- ★ Personal Journal focus on: What happened / How I felt / What I learned.

✍ تركز المذكرات الشخصية على: ما الذي حدث / كيف شعرت / ما الذي تعلمته

Journal Writing Features

- ★ Uses first-person pronouns (I, my, we).

✍ يستخدم ضمائر المتكلم مثل: (I - my - we).

- ★ Written in an informal, personal tone.

✍ يُكتب بأسلوب غير رسمي وشخصي.

- ★ Expresses thoughts, feelings, and reflections.

✍ يعبر عن الأفكار والمشاعر والتأملات.

- ★ Ideas are often written in a free, flexible structure.

✍ تُكتب الأفكار غالباً في بنية حرة ومرنة.

- ★ May include opinions, questions, or reactions.

✍ قد يتضمن آراءً أو أسئلة أو ردود أفعال.

- ★ Focuses on personal experiences rather than formal arguments.

✍ يركز على التجارب الشخصية بدلاً من الحجج الرسمية.

- ★ Grammar and punctuation are less rigid than in formal writing.

✍ القواعد وعلامات الترقيم أقل صرامة مقارنة بالكتابة الرسمية.

Model Journal Entry

نموذج لمذكرة شخصية

Dear Journal,

This week has been full of changes. I've started a new exercise routine, and I've been waking up early every morning to walk before school. It's been hard, but I already feel more energetic. I've also been trying to eat healthier food instead of snacks.

At school, we've been preparing for our Capstone Challenge; that's a project we work on as a team to research a topic and apply what we've learned to solve a real-world problem.

I worked with my group to develop a website to explain a science topic we studied this year. We've worked hard on the project, and I've learned how teamwork makes everything easier. Sometimes I feel tired, but I'm proud of what I've achieved this week.

Writing this down helps me see how much progress I've made. I hope I can keep these habits next month!



Exercise 24

Writing

- The purpose of using first-person pronouns (I, me, my) in a journal is to make the writing
 a. personal and informal
 b. professional and distant
 c. difficult for others to read
 d. suitable for a scientific report
 SB R 3
- In a Personal Journal, phrases like "I felt so proud when..." or "I've been wondering if..." are used to show
 a. formal academic facts
 b. personal reflections and feelings
 c. a biased political opinion
 d. a technical manual instruction
 SB R 3
- A personal journal can include thoughts about
 a. other people's lives
 b. school laws
 c. your own problems
 d. public events
- A personal journal is written in a/an tone.
 a. formal
 b. academic
 c. scientific
 d. informal
- Personal journals usually use pronouns.
 a. relative
 b. first-person
 c. possessive
 d. third-person
- In a personal journal, ideas are written in a structure.
 a. free
 b. strict
 c. fixed
 d. formal
- You can start a journal entry with ".....".
 a. Hello
 b. Nice to meet you
 c. Dear journal
 d. My Sir
- A personal journal may include opinions and
 a. facts
 b. rules
 c. arguments
 d. reactions
- Which sentence shows first-person writing?
 a. People learn new lessons every day
 b. He felt happy after the exam
 c. I learned something important today
 d. Students should work harder
- Which structure suits a personal journal best?
 a. Free and flexible ideas
 b. Question and answer
 c. Introduction – body – conclusion
 d. Numbered paragraphs

11. Which of the following **CANNOT** be written in a personal journal?
- Writing about your daily experiences
 - Describing how you have been feeling lately
 - Talking about a habit you have changed
 - Presenting scientific facts and formal arguments
12. A personal journal is **NOT**
- private
 - formal
 - personal
 - honest
13. Which of the following may be included in a personal journal?
- Rules and laws
 - Opinions and reactions
 - Definitions only
 - Official letters
14. Grammar and punctuation are less in personal journals.
- rigid
 - useful
 - clear
 - correct
15. A personal journal is not written like a/an
- diary
 - letter
 - note
 - essay
16. Personal journals are usually written for use.
- public
 - school
 - private
 - group
17. Journal writing allows you to record your daily
- schedules
 - rules
 - arguments
 - experiences
18. A personal journal should **NOT** mainly focus on
- feelings
 - personal experiences
 - formal arguments
 - reflections
19. Personal journal can be digital, which means it can be written
- on paper
 - in a textbook
 - on a phone or computer
 - on the board
20. A personal journal is mainly used to write about:
- scientific facts
 - historical events
 - personal experiences and feelings
 - formal arguments
21. Which situation best fits writing a personal journal?
- Explaining a science experiment
 - Writing school rules
 - Recording how you felt after a bad day
 - Reporting news
22. Which of the following sentences is **MOST** suitable for a personal journal?
- The results prove the importance of the topic
 - Many people believe that discipline is essential
 - This topic will be discussed in detail
 - I felt nervous at first, but later I became confident

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- After hearing the good news, Nadeen felt more
a. energetic b. refreshing c. single d. mental
- Ahmed noticed a big in his grades after studying daily.
a. punctuality b. routine c. variety d. difference
- Joury the support she receives from her friends.
a. appreciates b. inspires c. shapes d. reflects

B

Translation

A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.

- It is certain that you know that eco-tourism is a type of tourism that pays great attention to the environment.

- أ. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة البيئية هي نوع من السياحة التي تجلب الكثير من المال.
 ب. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة البيئية تعتبر نوع من السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة إلى حد ما.
 ج. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة المستدامة هي نوع من السياحة التي تهتم اهتماما كبيرا بالبيئة.
 د. من المؤكد أنك تعلم أن السياحة البيئية هي نوع من السياحة التي تهتم اهتماما كبيرا بالبيئة.

B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.

مما لا شك فيه أن للتلوث آثار سيئة على البيئة، سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات.

- Doubtless, pollution has nice effects on the environment whether it is on man, animal or plant.
- Doubtless, pollution has bad affection on the environment, whether it is on man, animal or plant.
- Doubtless, pollution has bad effects on the environment, whether it is on man, animal or plant.
- Doubtless, pollution has bad effects on the environment whether it is on man, animal or plant.

C

Writing

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- Sama didn't travel to Cairo. (never)
.....
- As soon as I had arrived at the airport, I called my mom. (until)
.....



A: Translate into Arabic:

1. Thanks to modern technology in the fields of communications, we can communicate with others. It has become part and parcel for our lives.

العريش ٢٠٢٤

- أ. بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجالات الاتصالات، مع التواصل مع الآخرين، لقد أصبحت جزء لا يتجزأ من حياتنا.
ب. شكرا للتكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجالات الاتصالات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين، فقد أصبحت جزء لا يتجزأ من حياتنا.
ج. بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجالات المواصلات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين، فقد أصبحت جزء لا يتجزأ من حياتنا.
د. بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة في مجالات الاتصالات، يمكننا التواصل مع الآخرين، فقد أصبحت جزء لا يتجزأ من حياتنا.

2. You should define your goal yourself, and not be distracted by anything else. Also, don't waste your effort in useless things.

روكسى ٢٠٢٤

- أ. عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر أيضا، لا تضع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.
ب. عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر أيضا، لا تضع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.
ج. عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك وتشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر أيضا، لا تضع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.
د. عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر أيضا، لا تسرف في مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.

3. The government adopts a sustainable development strategy which represents a roadmap to achieve a dignified life for us.

العياط ٢٠٢٤

- أ. تتبنى الحكومة إستراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمثل خارطة الطريق لكي تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.
ب. تتبنى الحكومة إستراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تماثل لخارطة الطريق لكي تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.
ج. تتبنى الوزارة إستراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمثل خارطة الطريق لكي تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.
د. تتبنى الحكومة إستراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمهد خارطة الطريق لكي تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.

B: Translate into English:

٤. من الأفضل لنا جميعا أن نستغل أوقاتنا في عمل أشياء مفيدة، فمن المعروف أن الوقت الضائع لا يسترد.

العياط ٢٠٢٤

- a. It is better for all of us to use our time to do useful things; it is well-known that wasted time cannot be recovered.
b. It is better for all of us to use our time to do useful things, as it is well-known that wasting time cannot be recovered.
c. It is better for us all to use our time to do usefully things; it is well-known that wasted time can be recovered.
d. It is better for our all to use our time to do useful things; it is good-known that wasted time cannot be recovered.

٥. التنمية المستدامة هي إستراتيجية تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية البشرية مع الحفاظ في الوقت نفسه على الموارد

الطبيعية التي يعتمد عليها الاقتصاد والمجتمع.

بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤

- a. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural source that the economy and society rely on.
b. Social development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the country and society rely on.
c. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.
d. Sustainable development is a strategy that needs to achieve humane development plans while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.



General Exercises on

Unit 7



Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- The list includes all names except one. The antonym of "include" is
a. cover b. involve c. add d. remove e. omit
- Students should respect their teachers at school. The synonym of "respect" is
a. insult b. ignore c. regard d. blame e. honor

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Employees are more productive when they are by rewards.
a. motivated b. discouraged c. disappointed d. indifferent
- My weekly study includes both subjects and revision time.
a. random b. disorder c. chaos d. schedule
- Students need strong abilities to solve complex problems.
a. manual b. bodily c. mental d. physical
- Regular exercise helps to improve overall and health.
a. disorder b. tiredness c. weakness d. fitness
- The job became dull because of the same tasks every day.
a. event b. celebration c. routine d. tradition
- The manager praised her because she always arrived exactly on time.
a. laziness b. punctuality c. weakness d. carelessness
- On my way home last night, I by some thieves, who stole everything. أبو تيش ٢٠٢٤
a. am attacked b. was attacked c. attacked d. be attacked
- After the homework, Ahmed played some computer games. الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤
a. has done b. has been done c. had been done d. did
- There were floods in the city as it for three days. أبنوب أسبوط ٢٠٢٢
a. rain b. had rained c. has rained d. had been raining
- He told me that he into a new flat the week before. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a. moves b. would move c. moved d. had moved
- Which opening sentence fits a personal journal?
a. According to the article b. This essay discusses
c. Today, I want to write about how I felt d. The following points show
- A personal journal can be written in a notebook or a space.
a. digital b. public c. written d. formal



Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the question:

There are deserts all over the world. They can be found in Africa, China, South America, and North America. In some places, deserts are growing. This is a serious problem because deserts destroy farmland and ruin land where animals live. When people cannot grow food or find animals to eat, they have to leave their homes. Sometimes, nature can cause deserts to spread. Wind can move sand away from deserts and onto useful land. When there is no rain for a long time, plants die and deserts grow. However, humans can also cause deserts to grow. This is called desertification, and it happens in many ways.

One way is when people cause too much air pollution, which can make an area hotter. Hotter weather can reduce the amount of rain as well. Too many people in one area can also damage the land. In addition, having many animals can harm the land. When large animals like

cows walk on soil too much, they turn it into dust. The wind easily blows this dust away. Trees help hold water in the ground. When people cut down too many trees, less water stays in the ground, and the soil is ruined. All of these things can speed up desertification. To stop deserts from growing, people must think of ways to treat the land better.

- What happens if there is no rain for a long time?
a. Flood b. Earthquake c. Drought d. Hurricane
- Causing too much pollution can lead to
a. climate change b. over population c. turning soil into dust d. much rain
- Where are deserts found?
a. Africa and South America b. The United States and China
c. On useful land d. All around the world
- How do humans cause desert growth?
a. By causing pollution b. By eating only vegetables
c. By planting trees d. By moving sand
- Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?
a. Where the world's deserts are b. How people live in deserts
c. Why some deserts are growing d. How cows can stop deserts from growing
- According to the passage, how can humans stop desert growth?
a. By using bicycles less b. By raising more cows
c. By cutting down trees d. By having fewer children
- According to the passage, what does the word (useful) mean?
a. for growing plants b. for raising more cows
c. for building houses d. for moving sand



Writing

- Accepting others is a highly civilised aspect that we all should have. You can express your opinion and respect the opinions of others as well.

١. يعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متحضرة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
 ب. يعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متعصبة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام الآخرين أيضاً.
 ج. يعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متحضرة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام من آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
 د. يعتبر قبول الآخر سمة سيئة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى عنها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
٢. تلعب التنمية البشرية دوراً هاماً في تطوير مهارات الإنسان وقدراته. وهذا يمكننا من الوصول إلى الاستفادة القصوى من إمكانياته.

- Human investment plays an important role in developing human skills and abilities. This enables us to reach the most benefit from its power.
- Human development plays an important role in developing human skills and abilities. This enables us to get the most benefit from his capabilities.
- Human development plays an important rule in developing students' skills and abilities. This enables us to get the most benefit from its capabilities.
- Human development plays an important role in developing human scales and abilities. This enables us to get the most benefit from its capabilities.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- After he had washed the car, he drove to work. (washing ...)
- She went to the airport after she had packed her bags. (before)

Answer the following questions:

- Why did Manolin cry when he saw Santiago sleeping?
- In your opinion, why did the villagers become silent when they saw the skeleton?

Write an Essay of about (150) words on the following:

"Your daily routine"



Skills

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف



أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Osama is at a bank. He wants to withdraw a sum of money.

- Teller : Number 458. How can I help you?
 Osama : ①
 Teller : ②?
 Osama : AS66232. Saving account.
 Teller : May I have a photocopy of your ID?
 Osama : I don't have a photocopy.
 Teller : ③ Give me your ID.
 Osama : Here it is.
 Teller : ④?
 Osama : 20000.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

A lot of people are against overweight in humans which is considered unhealthy. They are fighting a battle to reduce it. Studies are being done concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of these studies have given us the ability to understand how to deal with overweight problems. They showed that fat people have a high sense of taste and love more flavoured food than thin people. Some people react to stressful situations by eating. It has been found that mild exercise is a good way to lose weight. For example, using the stairs instead of the lift. Jogging is useful to lose weight, as well, sports should be done for healthy life.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Why are a lot of people against overweight in humans?
.....
- According to the text how is appetite controlled?
.....
- How do some people react to stressful situations?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a. health b. overweight c. a battle d. appetite
- Jogging is a kind of
 a. food b. flavour c. exercise d. stress

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

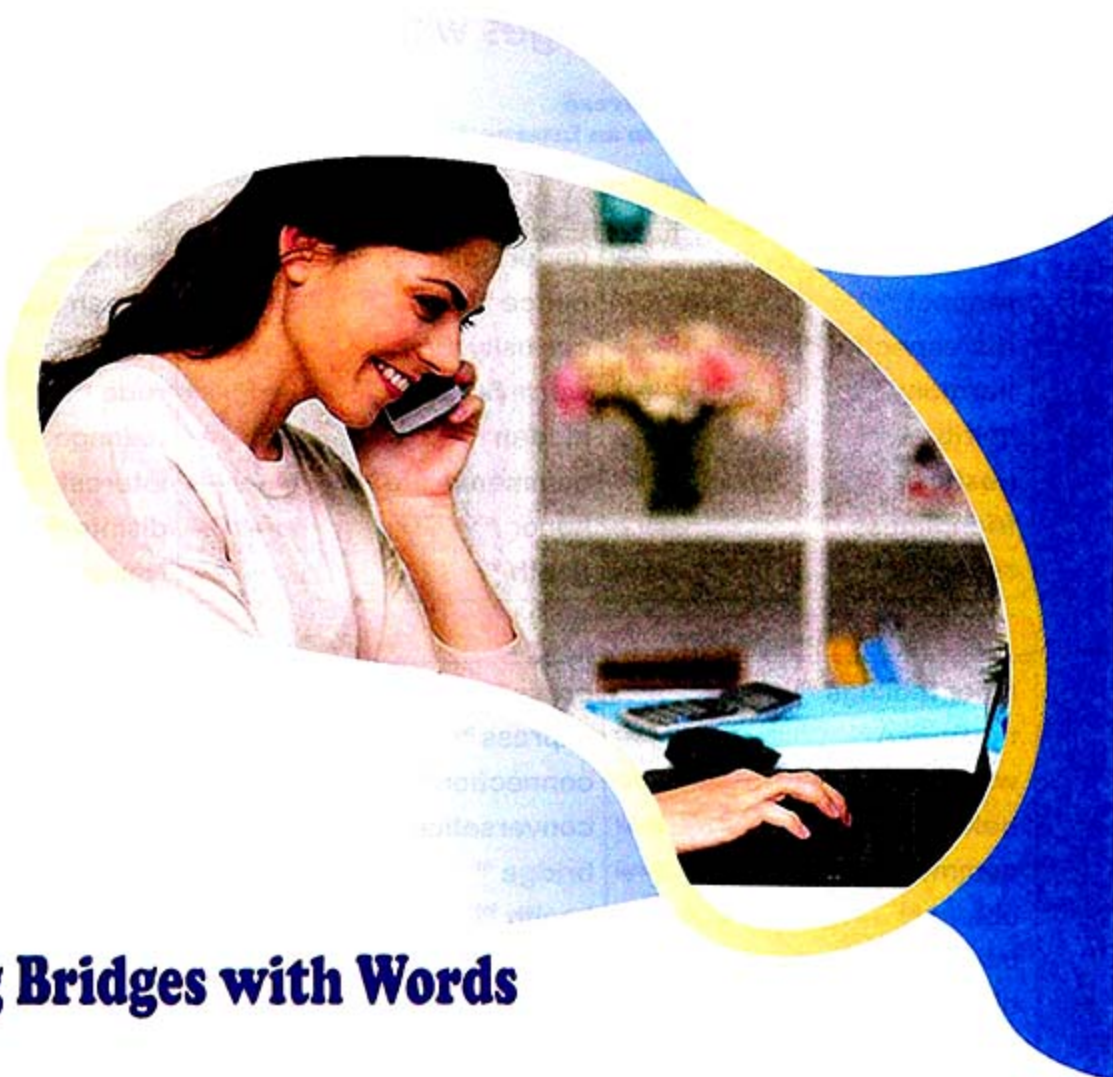
أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

The Decent life initiative is the best proof that the Egyptian Government pays great attention to improve the lives of citizens.

B. Translate into English: (1 Mark)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

يعتبر ارتفاع الأسعار مشكلة معقدة ويمكن حلها في زيادة الإنتاج والصادرات.



Unit 8

Building Bridges with Words

Learning Outcomes

Reading

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in texts about greetings, cross-cultural communication, and language use.
- Compare and contrast communication styles and greetings across different countries and cultures using appropriate vocabulary.
- Correctly use the present simple tense and the past simple tense to complete actions.

Language

- Apply grammar knowledge to describe personal experiences and cultural interactions.

Listening

- Listen for specific details in conversations about international schools, cultural greetings, and communication challenges.
- Write clear and coherent paragraphs or blog posts about personal crosscultural experiences.

Writing

- Reflect on learning from interactions with people from other cultures and describe how it has influenced personal growth using appropriate vocabulary and grammar.

Speaking

- Discuss personal experiences and opinions about greetings, cultural differences, and language learning.
- Explain the importance of empathy, respect, and curiosity in communication.

Unit 8

Building Bridges with Words

Lessons

- 1 The Warm Bread
- 2 Voices from an International School



Key Vocabulary

greeting (n)	تحيةة	understanding (n)	فهم	enthusiasm (n)	حماس
respect (n/v)	احترام / يحترم	peace (n)	سلام	human soul (n)	الروح الإنسانية
disrespectful (adj)	غير محترم	curiosity (n)	فضول	faith (n)	إيمان
harmony (n)	انسجام / تناغم	warm bread (n)	أجواء الترحيب الدافئة	rude (adj)	وقح / فظ
spiritual (adj)	روحي	hidden (adj)	مخفي / خفي	balance (n/v)	توازن / يوازن
gestures (n)	إيماءات	commemorate (v)	يخلد / يحيي ذكرى	interest (n)	اهتمام
friendliness (n)	ود / لطف	honor (n/v)	شرف / يكرم	disinterest (n)	عدم اهتمام
reflect (v)	يعكس	depth (n)	عمق	Namaste (n)	تحيةة هندية

Main Vocabulary

inner feelings (n)	مشاعر داخلية	press (v)	يضغط	movement (n)	حركة
memorize (v)	يحفظ	express (v)	يعبر	cheek (n)	خد
warmth (n)	دفء	connection (n)	تواصل / ارتباط	secret (n)	سر
belonging (n)	انتماء	conversation (n)	محادثة	classmates (n)	زملاء الدراسة
communication (n)	تواصل	bridge (n)	جسر	teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي
obtain (v)	يحصل على	health (n)	صحة	kiss (n/v)	قبل / يقبل
bow (v)	ينحني	step (n)	خطوة	handshake (n)	مصافحة
bowing (n)	الانحناء	lack (n/v)	نقص / ينقص	culture (n)	ثقافة
value (n/v)	قيمة / يقيم	surprise (n/v)	يفاجئ / مفاجأة	differences (n)	اختلافات
challenge (n/v)	تحدي / يتحدى	purpose (n)	هدف	stranger (n)	غريب
friendship (n)	صداقة	trust (n/v)	ثقة / يثق	traditions (n)	تقاليد
friendly (adj)	ودود	sign (n)	علامة	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
polite (adj)	مehذب	consider (v)	يعتبر	rules (n)	قواعد
impolite (adj)	غير مهذب	change (n/v)	تغيير / يغير	national (adj)	وطني / قومي
politeness (n)	الآداب / اللباقة	celebrate (v)	يحتفل بـ	international (adj)	دولي / عالمي

Collocations

take exams	يؤدي الامتحانات	show disinterest	يظهر عدم اهتمام
carry messages	ينقل الرسائل	make friends	يكون صداقات
express friendliness	يعبر عن الود	have a purpose	له هدف
gain experience	يكتسب خبرة	build bridges	يبنى جسوراً (يكون علاقات)
show power	يظهر قوة	build trust	يبنى الثقة
memorize rules	يحفظ القواعد	build connections	يبنى علاقات
face challenges	يواجه التحديات	build understanding	يبنى التفاهم
share stories	يشارك القصص	build confidence	يبنى الثقة بالنفس

Expressions & Prepositions

build bridges with words	يقرب وجهات النظر بالكلام	lack of	نقص في
around the world	حول العالم	according to	وفقاً لـ
greet with a kiss	يحيي بقبلة	learn from	يتعلم من
interested in	مهتم بـ	connected with	مرتبط بـ
a sign of	علامة على	come from	يأتي من / يتحدر من
spiritual connection	ارتباط روحي	communicate with	يتواصل مع (شخص)
school community	المجتمع المدرسي	communicate in	يتواصل بـ / يتحدث بـ (باللغة)

Definitions

gesture	إيماءة	▶ a body movement to express meaning
rude	وقح / غير مهذب	▶ impolite or disrespectful
harmony	انسجام	▶ peace or balance between people
spiritual	روحي	▶ connected with the human soul, inner feelings, or faith
disinterest	عدم اهتمام	▶ lack of interest or enthusiasm
Namaste	تحية هندية	▶ a traditional Indian greeting used to show respect, politeness, and good will
warm bread	أجواء الترحيب الدافئة	▶ refers to a welcoming and comforting atmosphere that makes people feel relaxed, valued, and at home

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
link	يربط	connect, join, relate	separate, disconnect, divide
obtain	يحصل على	get, gain, receive	lose, give, miss
hidden	مخفي	secret, covered, unseen	clear, visible, open
commemorate	يحيي ذكرى	remember, celebrate, honor	forget, ignore, neglect
honor	يكرم / يحترم	respect, value, appreciate	disrespect, insult, dishonor
polite	مهذب	respectful, well-mannered	rude, impolite, disrespectful
express	يعبر عن	show, communicate, display	hide, conceal, suppress
greet	يحيي	welcome, salute, address	ignore, avoid, neglect
peace	سلام	calm, harmony, safety	war, conflict, violence
harmony	انسجام	peace, balance, agreement	conflict, chaos, disorder
bow	ينحني	bend, stoop, lean	stand, straighten, rise
connection	ترابط	link, bond, relationship	separation, disconnection, division

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبّر
reflect	يعكس	reflection	انعكاس	reflective	انعكاسي
honor	يكرم / يحترم	honor	شرف / تكريم	honorable	مشرف / محترم
connect	يربط / يواصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل / مرتبط
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار / تفكير	considerable	كبير / مهم
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	اجتماعي

Language Notes



Notice the Difference

connect	يربط / يوصل	communicate	يتواصل
harm	يضر / ضرر	harmony	انسجام / تناغم
guest	ضيف	gesture	إيماءة
road	طريق	rude	لفظ / وقح
peace	سلام	pace	سرعة / وتيرة
enthusiasm	حماس	enthusiastic	متحمس
propose	يقترح / يقدم فكرة	purpose	هدف / غرض
express	يعبر عن	depress	يشيط / يجبط
greet	يحيي / يسلم على	great	عظيم / كبير
human	إنسان	humane	إنساني
cheek	خد	check	يتحقق / يفحص
respect	يحترم / احترام	respectful	مهابذ / يظهر الاحترام
conversation	محادثة	conservation	الحفاظ / الصون
different	مختلف	difference	اختلاف / فرق

interested, keen, fond & enthusiastic

be interested in	مهتم بـ	He is interested in playing football.
be keen on	متحمس لـ	He is keen on playing football.
be fond of	مغرم بـ	He is fond of playing football.
be enthusiastic about	متحمس لـ	He is enthusiastic about playing football.

enthusiasm, enthusiast & enthusiastic

enthusiasm	حماس	Nothing you can say will stop her enthusiasm.
enthusiast	متحمس (شخص)	She is a football enthusiast.
enthusiastic	متحمس	You don't seem very enthusiastic about the party.

national, international & local

national	قومي	The government is doing a national census.
international	دولي	He will play his 30 th international match.
local	محلي	This belongs to our village, it is local.



The + صفة من الدرجة الثانية + The + صفة من الدرجة الثانية +

كلما..... كلما

★ The more you study, the higher marks you get.

"The Warm Bread"

What does "The warm bread" mean?

Building Bridges Through Greetings

Every culture ⁽¹⁾ has its own way of saying hello. A greeting ⁽²⁾ may seem simple, but it carries powerful messages of **respect** ⁽³⁾, warmth, and belonging. Around the world, people express **friendliness** ⁽⁴⁾ through different words, **gestures** ⁽⁵⁾, and traditions.

In Japan, people bow when they meet. The **depth** ⁽⁶⁾ of the bow shows respect — the lower the bow, the greater the honor. **Bowing** ⁽⁷⁾ is more than **politeness** ⁽⁸⁾; it reflects the Japanese value of **harmony** ⁽⁹⁾. In India, people press their hands together and say Namaste, which means "I bow to you." It shows both respect and **spiritual** ⁽¹⁰⁾ connection.

In France, people greet with a kiss on each **cheek** ⁽¹¹⁾, while in Egypt, a warm handshake and smile are signs of **friendship** ⁽¹²⁾. In Kenya, people greet with long, friendly **conversations** ⁽¹³⁾ about **health**, ⁽¹⁴⁾ family, and peace. A short greeting is considered **rude** ⁽¹⁵⁾ because it shows **disinterest** ⁽¹⁶⁾.

Despite these differences, all greetings have the same **purpose** ⁽¹⁷⁾: to build bridges between people. Learning how to greet others correctly is not just **polite** ⁽¹⁸⁾; it is a **step** ⁽¹⁹⁾ toward **understanding** ⁽²⁰⁾, respect, and **peace** ⁽²¹⁾ among cultures.



- (١) ثقافة
- (٢) تحيةة
- (٣) احترام
- (٤) ود / لطف
- (٥) إيماءات
- (٦) عمق
- (٧) الانحناء
- (٨) لباقة / تهذيب
- (٩) انسجام
- (١٠) روعي
- (١١) خد
- (١٢) صداقة
- (١٣) محادثات
- (١٤) صحة
- (١٥) وقع / فظ
- (١٦) عدم اهتمام
- (١٧) هدف
- (١٨) مهذب
- (١٩) خطوة
- (٢٠) فهم
- (٢١) سلام



Listening



Voices from an International School

- | | | |
|----------------|---|------------------------------|
| Teacher | Good morning, class. Today, we'll talk about international ⁽¹⁾ schools. | (١) دولي |
| Sami | I've been studying at one for two years in Dubai. My classmates ⁽²⁾ come from more than twenty countries! I've learned to respect ⁽³⁾ other cultures and to listen carefully before I speak. | (٢) زميل دراسة
(٣) احترام |
| Maya | I'm from Kenya, and my school celebrates ⁽⁴⁾ International Day. We wear traditional ⁽⁵⁾ clothes, share food from our countries, and perform songs. It's amazing | (٤) يحتفل
(٥) تقليدي |
| Teacher | That sounds wonderful. What have you gained from this experience ? | (٦) كسب صداقات |
| Sami | I've learned that teamwork is stronger when people think differently. | (٧) يتواصل |
| Maya | Yes, and I've made friends ⁽⁶⁾ from all over the world. English has helped us communicate ⁽⁷⁾ and understand each other. | (٨) سر |
| Teacher | So, what's the secret ⁽⁸⁾ to building bridges with words ? | (٩) الفضول |
| Sami | Respect and curiosity ⁽⁹⁾ . When we listen and ask questions, we learn. | |
| Maya | Exactly! Language connects hearts, not just minds. | |



Exercise 01 Key Vocabulary

1. The of the bow in Japan indicates the level of respect shown. SB R 3
 a. depth b. length c. weight d. speed
2. People express friendliness through different words, and traditions. SB
 a. masks b. risks c. gestures d. types
3. A short greeting is considered rude because it shows SB
 a. poverty b. disinterest c. honesty d. interest
4. She spoke with while describing her travel experience.
 a. connection b. curving c. poverty d. enthusiasm
5. A warm helps people feel safe and welcome everywhere.
 a. running b. greeting c. floating d. sinking
6. different cultures builds respect and strong relationships.
 a. Caring b. Misunderstanding c. Understanding d. Inviting
7. English has helped students and understand each other better. SB
 a. transmit b. press c. confuse d. communicate
8. Learning how others greet people shows and good manners. SB
 a. respect b. disrespect c. weakness d. falseness
9. Greetings help people live in and harmony together. SB
 a. conflict b. difficulty c. peace d. boredom
10. Every has its own special way to say hello to others. SB
 a. custom b. capture c. lecture d. culture
11. Through every greeting, we can build and understand others better.
 a. blame b. trust c. dishonesty d. cruelty
12. It is to turn away when someone is speaking to you.
 a. normal b. polite c. rude d. nice
13. Living in creates balance and happiness in daily life.
 a. harmony b. poverty c. dishonesty d. astronomy
14. encourages people to learn about new customs and traditions.
 a. Architecture b. Medicine c. Engineering d. Curiosity
15. It is to ignore someone who greets you politely.
 a. nice b. polite c. disrespectful d. acceptable
16. Some greetings have meanings in different cultures around the world.
 a. spiritual b. skillful c. biomedical d. economical
17. People national days to remember important historical events.
 a. cooperate b. communicate c. commemorate d. collect
18. We people who work hard to help their communities.
 a. declare b. publish c. announce d. honor
19. His short answers showed in continuing the conversation
 a. spirit b. disinterest c. interest d. activity
20. in greetings makes strangers feel comfortable and respected.
 a. Friendliness b. Dishonesty c. Cruelty d. Stupidity
21. Speaking in an impolite way to others shows that someone is
 a. friendly b. respectful c. kind d. rude
22. Music and art can touch the and make people feel calm.
 a. soul b. seal c. soil d. sail

23. helps people stay hopeful during difficult times.
 a. Misunderstanding b. Disbelief c. Faith d. Weakness
24. means a body movement used to express meaning without words.
 a. Harmony b. Disinterest c. Spiritual d. Gesture
25. Important messages are sometimes inside simple stories.
 a. hidden b. hide c. ridden d. wooden
26. A polite greeting helps create between people in conversation
 a. discourage b. impress c. stress d. balance
27. refers to something connected with the human soul, inner feelings, or faith.
 a. Harmony b. Disinterest c. Spiritual d. Gesture
28. "Namaste" is a traditional greeting in
 a. France b. Japan c. India d. Egypt
29. means peace or balance between people in a relationship or group.
 a. Harmony b. Argument c. Tension d. Conflict
30. means a lack of interest or enthusiasm in something.
 a. Harmony b. Disinterest c. Spiritual d. Gesture

SB R 3

Exercise 04
Main Vocabulary

31. People respect, kindness, and friendliness through polite greetings and smiles.
 a. express b. stress c. depress d. interest
32. Learning how others greet people shows and good manners.
 a. misunderstanding b. disrespect c. respect d. ignorance
33. The depth of a clearly shows how much respect a person gives.
 a. raw b. clue c. paw d. bow
34. Despite these differences, all greetings have the same
 a. purple b. purpose c. propose d. mix
35. Friendly greetings give visitors a deep feeling of and comfort.
 a. movement b. sadness c. belonging d. focus
36. Greetings help create a strong and positive between different people.
 a. section b. connection c. fiction d. contract
37. Long friendly are an important part of greetings in some countries.
 a. tasks b. missions c. conversations d. conversations
38. is a respectful movement used in formal greetings in Japan.
 a. Escaping b. Floating c. Bowing d. Boredom
39. in greetings shows respect, care, and good manners toward others.
 a. Harm b. Ignorance c. Difference d. Politeness
40. It is to ignore someone who politely greets you in public.
 a. impolite b. polite c. gentle d. comfortable
41. Some greetings are and have been used for hundreds of years.
 a. recent b. new c. modern d. traditional
42. visitors should learn polite greetings before visiting other countries.
 a. Usual b. National c. Human d. International
43. differences make greetings interesting, unique, and meaningful around the world.
 a. Cultural b. Coral c. Fictional d. Partial

44. A greeting helps people feel valued and comfortable in any culture.
 a. further b. respected c. respectful d. helpless
45. A very short greeting may show a of interest or attention to others.
 a. stock b. block c. lock d. lack
46. Students new words to improve their language skills.
 a. minimize b. memorize c. realize d. celebrate
47. A warm and greeting can pleasantly surprise visitors from other countries.
 a. frying b. unfriendly c. friendly d. juicy
48. A short greeting is rude in some cultures as it shows a lack of interest.
 a. consisted b. considered c. collected d. connected
49. Respect is an important that helps people live together peacefully.
 a. value b. image c. volume d. fiction
50. Following helps keep communication polite and respectful.
 a. roles b. ropes c. rules d. roads
51. helps people work together and achieve better results.
 a. Teamwork b. Ignorance c. Homework d. Conflict
52. In some countries, people greet with a kiss on the
 a. shock b. tongue c. check d. cheek



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions,
Derivatives & Language Notes

53. Students exams at the end of the school year.
 a. take b. make c. feel d. give
54. Very short answers may disinterest during conversations with others.
 a. do b. show c. take d. make
55. We can build bridges words by speaking kindly and respectfully.
 a. on b. by c. in d. with
56. Greetings can messages of respect, warmth, and friendship.
 a. move b. carry c. concentrate d. focus
57. Small actions can differences in how people understand each other.
 a. move b. float c. make d. focus
58. Smiles and kind words help friendliness between strangers.
 a. sing b. stress c. depress d. express
59. Learning about different cultures helps understanding among people.
 a. build b. carry c. mend d. press
60. Travelers often challenges when learning new cultural customs.
 a. follow b. test c. face d. exit
61. In some countries, people greet a kiss to show friendship.
 a. on b. with c. in d. by
62. People communicate different ways depending on their culture.
 a. on b. with c. in d. by

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

63. We use bridges to link different parts of the city. The synonym of the underlined word "link" is
 a. connect b. divide c. join d. separate e. ignore
64. The ancient treasure was hidden in the cave. The antonym of the underlined word "hidden" is
 a. secret b. concealed c. covered d. obvious e. visible
65. The depth of the bow in Japan reflects a high level of respect. The synonym of "reflects" is
 a. hides b. shows c. expresses d. ignores e. avoids
66. Students must memorize the rules to behave properly. The synonym of the underlined word "memorize" is
 a. learn b. forget c. ignore d. remember e. lose
67. The internet helps create a strong connection between people worldwide. The antonym of the underlined word connection is
 a. separation b. break c. communication d. relationship e. link
68. In Japan, people bow to show respect. The antonym of the underlined word bow is
 a. ignore b. straighten c. rise d. blend e. incline
69. Living in harmony with others is very important. The antonym of the underlined word harmony is
 a. conflict b. chaos c. balance d. agreement e. compromise
70. After the argument, the village returned to peace. The antonym of the underlined word "peace" is
 a. friendship b. love c. calm d. war e. conflict
71. A short greeting may show disinterest during conversations. The antonym of the underlined word disinterest is
 a. boredom b. disrespect c. attention d. curiosity e. weakness
72. People usually greet each other with a smile. The synonym of the underlined word greet is
 a. leave b. welcome c. meet d. ignore e. insult
73. Students must honor their teachers and classmates. The synonym of the underlined word honor is
 a. respect b. ignore c. disrespect d. admire e. insult
74. It is important to be polite when speaking to elders. The synonym of the underlined word polite is
 a. careless b. respectful c. courteous d. rude e. impolite
75. She worked hard to obtain a good grade in the exam. The synonym of the underlined word obtain is
 a. get b. achieve c. lose d. forget e. fail

GIANTS

ترقبوا!!!!!!

كتاب بنك الأسئلة
للمرحلة الثانوية



The Present Simple Tense المضارع البسيط

الإثبات

Affirmation

I / You / We / They + inf. → المصدر

- ❖ I **play** football on Fridays.
- ❖ They **watch** films at home.
- He / She / It + inf. + (s / es / ies)
- ❖ He **plays** football on Fridays.
- ❖ Jana **watches** films at home.

النفى

Negative

I / You / We / They + don't + inf.

- ❖ I **don't play** football on Fridays.
- ❖ They **don't watch** films at home.
- He / She / It + doesn't + inf.
- ❖ He **doesn't play** football on Fridays.
- ❖ Jana **doesn't watch** films at home.

السؤال

Question

Do + I / you / we / they + inf. ?

- ❖ Do you **play** football on Fridays?
- ✓ Yes, I **do**.
- ✗ No, I **don't**.
- Does + he / she / it + inf. ?
- ❖ Does Jana **watch** films at home?
- ✓ Yes, she **does**.
- ✗ No, she **doesn't**.

الجهول

Passive

مفعول + am / is / are + P.P.

- ❖ Football **is played** on Fridays.
- ❖ Films **are watched** at home by Jana.

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

always

دائماً ▶ Seif **always cries** when he is hungry.
▶ Toka **is always** tired in the evenings.

usually = be (get) used to + V + ing

عادة ▶ Jana **usually gets** up early.
▶ Jana **is used to getting** up early.

often

غالباً ▶ She **often eats** pasta.

sometimes

أحياناً ▶ I **sometimes walk** to school.

rarely - seldom

نادراً ▶ He **rarely comes** late.

never

أبداً ▶ I **never drive** into town.

إذا جاءت أول الجملة تتبع بصيغة سؤال

▶ **Never** does she sleep late.

ever

حتى الآن (في السؤال) ▶ Do you **ever** drive a car?

every

كل ▶ **Every Friday**, Jana **goes** to the club.

تأتي أظرف التكرار قبل
الفعل الأساسي
V. be أو بعد

Uses الاستخدامات

- ★ Water **boils** at 100°c. ١ التعبير عن الحقائق.
- ★ Toka **gets** up late. ٢ التعبير عن العادات.
- ★ Al Daifi **works** as a teacher. ٣ التعبير عن موقف حقيقي دائم.
- ٤ نستخدم في الحالة الصفرية والحالة الأولى **if**.
- ★ If you **heat** water, it **boils**. ★ If she **studies** hard, she **will succeed**.
- ٥ نستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية مثل: (after / before / when) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر مستقبل.
- ★ After she **finishes** her homework, she **will sleep**.
- ★ Seif **will go** to the club before he **goes** home.
- ★ They **won't watch** TV until they **tidy** their room.
- ٦ نستخدم للتعبير عن المستقبل مع مواعيد مثل المواسلات والامتحانات والظواهر.
- ★ The lesson **starts** at 7 o'clock. ★ The train **leaves** at 2:00 a.m.
- ٧ نستخدم مع أفعال الحب والمشاغرة والتفكير بدلاً من المضارع المستمر.
- ★ I **love** my family. ★ She **wants** to be an actress.
- ٨ شكل **V. be & V. have** في المضارع البسيط.



1) V. be (am - is - are) (am not - isn't - aren't)

- ★ She **is** a doctor but she **isn't** clever.



2) V. have (have - has) (don't have - doesn't have)

- ★ He **has** a house but he **doesn't have** a car.

⚡ لاحظ يمكننا استخدام **now - still** مع المضارع البسيط.

now

حدث غير مستمر أثناء الكلام. الآن I **work** as a teacher **now**.

still

ما زال She **is still** smart.

٩ للتعبير عن عادة مستمرة يمكن استخدام واحد من التعبيرات الآتية:

Sub. + usually / always / often ... + inf. / inf. + s

- ★ Ali **usually sleeps** early.

It is ... 's habit to + inf.

- ★ It **is** Ali's **habit to** sleep early.

Sub. + (am / is / are) used to + Ing

- ★ Ali **is used to sleeping** early.

Sub. + no longer + inf. / inf. + s

- ★ Ali **no longer sleeps** late.

سبق شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة السابعة



Exercise 24 Language Level 1

- Water when it gets hot. SB
 a. evaporate b. evaporates c. evaporating d. evaporated
- The moon around the earth. SB
 a. goes b. went c. is going d. has gone
- I my hobbies after I finish work. SB
 a. doing b. does c. do d. did
- The first bus at 6:00 every day. SB
 a. is left b. is leaving c. has left d. leaves
- I often a rest after school. SB
 a. take b. takes c. taking d. took
- I cycle to school. SB
 a. just b. never c. ever d. already
- My brother to Saudi Arabia in 2018. SB
 a. travel b. had traveled c. traveled d. was traveling
- Last year, I a sports club. SB
 a. was joining b. have joined c. had joined d. joined
- My grandma us stories every evening when we were children. SB
 a. was telling b. told c. was told d. had told
- My teacher always his father on the farm when he was young. SB
 a. helped b. helps c. was helped d. had helped
- Rahma sometimes words that sound right but cause confusion. SB
 a. use b. used c. uses d. is using
- People better when they listen carefully. SB
 a. connect b. connects c. connected d. has connected
- Bassem Rahma advice about politeness last week. SB
 a. give b. gives c. gave d. given
- Ahmed plays chess outside the house. الحوامدية ٢٠٢٤ غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤
 a. ever b. doesn't c. isn't d. never
- Mr Adel early at the weekends to have enough sleep. بني مزار ٢٠٢٤
 a. usually gets up b. gets up always c. don't often get up d. never gets up
- I won't help my young brother till I my work. دمياط ٢٠٢٤ أسبوط ابوتيج ٢٠٢٤
 a. finish b. finished c. finishes d. had finished
- your parents usually donate blood? - Yes, they always do so. طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. Do b. Did c. Why d. When
- It's known that the human body 206 bones. بنها ٢٠٢٤
 a. had b. was c. has d. have
- The match at 4.30 this afternoon. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
 a. is ending b. ending c. will be ending d. ends
- Our bus driver us to school on time. He is very punctual. أسبوط ٢٠٢٢
 a. always drive b. always drives c. drive always d. drives always
- We will go to the park once we doing our homework. الهرم ٢٠٢٤ سواح طما ٢٠٢٤
 a. finished b. finishing c. finish d. had finished
- Every twelve months, the earth the sun. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
 a. orbit b. orbits c. orbiting d. orbited
- My father is a punctual person, he late. أبو كبير ٢٠٢٢
 a. comes never b. never coming c. never comes d. coming ever

24. As soon as my father , I will tell him everything. المذا ٢٠٢٢
 a. come b. comes c. will come d. had come
25. The sun in the west as usual. ٤م
 a. set b. have set c. is setting d. sets
26. The poor never enough money. ٤م
 a. have b. has c. are d. is
27. My mother up before me.
 a. wake usually b. usually wake c. usually wakes d. don't wake
28. Now, Salah as a role model for all young Egyptians. المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٢
 a. knows b. is known c. is knowing d. will be known
29. When Salma reads a story, she interested in its moral.
 a. is usually b. usually is c. was usually d. usually was
30. Before he to bed, he will send an e-mail to his uncle in Spain.
 a. went b. had gone c. going d. goes
31. Our class every day. القوسية ٢٠٢٢
 a. cleans b. clean c. is cleaned d. is cleaning
32. Money into the area by the tourists, so they are a source of the national income. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢ فاقوس ٢٠٢٢
 a. brought b. brings c. are brought d. is brought
33. Egyptian cotton clothes all over the world. المذا ٢٠٢٢ سوهاج اخميم ٢٠٢٤ طهطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold
34. English all over the world, it is an international language. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. spoke b. is spoken c. is speaking d. will speak
35. The little bird by its mother till it can fly. الزيتون ٢٠٢٢ جنوب الجيزة خدمات ٢٠٢٤
 a. feeds b. was fed c. fed d. is fed
36. Students two foreign languages in secondary schools. الهرم ٢٠٢٤
 a. teach b. are taught c. are teaching d. teaching
37. My trousers well every week by the laundry. They are professional. أسوط ٢٠٢٢
 a. are wash b. is washed c. are washed d. is washing
38. My brother three books yesterday. القوس ٢٠٢٤
 a. reads b. read c. has read d. rode
39. The thief and sent to prison. بنها ٢٠٢٢
 a. was arrested b. arrested c. was arresting d. has arrested



Exercise ٥٨ Language Level 2

40. Look at the schedule, the first train to Aswan at 5.00 a.m. العجمي ٢٠٢٢ سوهاج طما ٢٠٢٤ قنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. is leaving b. leaves c. will leave d. going to leave
41. Belal late for work. الاقصر ٢٠٢٢ قنا ٢٠٢٤ القوسية ٢٠٢٤
 a. never is b. be never c. never be d. is never
42. The rich mud reaches Egyptian farmland. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
 a. don't b. no longer c. doesn't d. any longer
43. Which of the following sentences is grammatically correct? القوس ٢٠٢٤
 a. He usually comes early. b. Early, he usually come.
 c. He early comes usually. d. Usually, he early comes.
44. I to work every morning; it is my habit. ٤م
 a. used to walk b. am used to walking c. walks d. always walked
45. My brother three languages now. ٤م
 a. is speaking b. spoken c. speaks d. speak

46. Magdy usually late for school ? - Yes, Sir.
a. Does b. Has c. Is d. Was
47. Doctors after patients in hospitals. It is their job.
a. looks b. looked c. looking d. look
48. He doesn't paint the wall, it by him.
a. painted b. has painted c. isn't painted d. were painted
49. Most teachers a lot of training every year to be able to use technology.
a. give b. are giving c. were given d. are given
50. Wood for heating and cooking.
a. usually burn b. usually burns c. is usually burned d. are usually burned
51. It's known that scientists all over the world.
a. appreciate b. have appreciated c. appreciated d. are appreciated
52. Every day, my room while I am at school.
a. is tidy b. tidied c. is tidied d. is being tidied
53. Pupils homework to do every day.
a. are giving b. given c. is given d. are given
54. My friend Hani by most people because he is friendly and kind.
a. is respected b. is respecting c. is respect d. respected
55. Rawan used to be lazy, but now she
a. does no longer b. is no longer c. no longer does d. no longer is
56. I'd rather Mona her time.
a. wasted b. not waste c. doesn't waste d. didn't waste
57. A: He to sit down until he had apologised.
a. didn't allow b. don't allow c. wasn't allowed d. was allowed



Exercise 04

Language Level 3

58. Never to school late. He is so punctual.
a. he comes b. comes he c. does he come d. is he come
59. You brother for Cairo just now.
a. has left b. had left c. left d. is leaving
60. Mai any meals outdoors.
a. hasn't b. never has c. has never d. isn't had
61. Which sentence is grammatically correct?
a. He doesn't lies b. He never lie c. Never does he lie d. Never does he lies
62. you sorry for what you said?
a. Do b. Did c. Was d. Are
63. Mrs Mai such hard work, she is always lazy.
a. is used to b. used to c. isn't used to d. didn't use to
64. What on Fridays? - He always practises his favourite hobbies.
a. did Ali use to do b. is Ali used to doing c. had Ali used to do d. Ali is used to doing
65. While he was playing football, he his leg.
a. breaking b. broke c. breaks d. was broken
66. My daughter to the club every day when she was on holiday.
a. goes b. go c. was gone d. went
67. My grandparents a holiday last summer.
a. never had b. never has c. have never had d. never have

68. He felt exhausted as he has never been used to such hard work. دمايط ٢٠٢٤
 a. doing b. did c. do d. done
69. When I was on holiday, I tennis every day. العملاقة منازل ٢٠٢٤
 a. play b. would play c. played d. have played
70. While studying, he asleep. المنطقة ٢٠٢٤
 a. fall b. fallen c. fell d. falls
71. She used to be active, but now she المنطقة ٢٠٢٤
 a. wasn't b. isn't c. doesn't d. don't
72. Civil engineers get used to in the sun. المنطقة ٢٠٢٤
 a. a work b. working c. works d. worked
73. My friend used to get high marks but now he وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. isn't
74. One of our windows last night.
 a. were broken b. is broke c. broken d. was broken
75. As a student, our teacher for his good manners. طامية ٢٠٢٥
 a. used to praise b. was praising c. praised d. used to be praised

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It is Ali's habit to follow a strict routine in his life. (always) SB
2. Last week, Bassem explained everything clearly. (a week) SB
3. Rahma listens carefully. (carelessly) SB
4. Samir usually cycled to school when he was in primary school. (used to) SB
5. Rahma and Elham didn't use to shop online. (never) SB
6. Ahmed read a book last night. (A book ...)
7. We visited our grandparents when we were young. (used to)
8. My father studied English at 7 yesterday. (His lunch...)
9. They visited the museum last month. (The museum)
10. She studied English in America in 2020. (ago)
11. He cleaned his room yesterday. (His room)
12. Did the students answer the questions? (Were)
13. They used to get up early. (no longer)
14. They used to get up early. (any longer)
15. She no longer eats pasta. (used to)



Unit 8

Lessons

Building Bridges with Words

- 3 Words that Connect or Confuse
- 4 Uniting People Through Communication
- 5 My Cross-Cultural Experience



Key Vocabulary

connect (v)	يربط / يوصل	misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم	patience (n)	صبر
confuse (v)	يُربك	empathy (n)	تعاطف	translation (n)	ترجمة
interrupt (v)	يُقاطِع	curiosity (n)	فضول	discovery (n)	اكتشاف
tone (n)	نبرة / لهجة	transform (v)	يُحوّل	qualities (n)	صفات
harmony (n)	انسجام / تناغم	borders (n)	حدود	means (n)	وسيلة / وسائل
informal expressions	تعبيرات غير رسمية	trade (n/v)	تجارة / يتاجر	lively (adj)	حيوي
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	identity (n)	هوية	preserve (v)	يحافظ على

Main Vocabulary

exchange (n/v)	تبادل / يتبادل	alive (adj)	حي	pace (n)	وتيرة / سرعة
blog post (n)	تدوينة / منشور مدونة	mind (n/v)	عقل / يُمانع	global (adj)	عالمي
open-minded (adj)	متفتح	goods (n)	بضائع	communication (n)	التواصل
reflection (n)	انعكاس / تأمل	distant (adj)	بعيد	cultural (adj)	ثقافي
conversational (adj)	حواري	engaging (adj)	جذاب	actively (adv)	بنشاط
nation (n)	أمة	cheerful (adj)	مرح / مبتهج	polite (adj)	مehذب
promote (v)	يشجع / يعزز	care (n/v)	يهتم / عناية	chat (n/v)	يُدرش / درشة
phrase (n)	عبارة	unite (v)	يُوحّد / يتحد	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
facial (adj)	وجهي	treasure (n/v)	كنز / يثمن	powerful (adj)	قوي / مؤثر
eye contact (n)	التواصل البصري	confident (adj)	واثق	expressive (adj)	تعبيري
perfectly (adv)	تماماً	occur (v)	يحدث / يقع	express (v)	يُعبر
idioms (n)	تعبيرات اصطلاحية	beats (n)	نبضات	discussion (n)	مناقشة / نقاش
emojis (n)	رموز تعبيرية	strengthen (v)	يقوي / يعزز	tip (n)	نصيحة
devices (n)	أجهزة	reduce (v)	يقلل	confusing (adj)	مربك / محير
native (adj)	أصلي / محلي	peacefully (adv)	بسلام	confused (adj)	مربك / مشوش
heartbeat (n)	نبض القلب	realize (v)	يدرك / يفهم	confusion (n)	ارتباك / لخبطة
notice (n/v)	يلاحظ / ملاحظة	clear (adj)	واضح		

Collocations

share ideas	يشارك الأفكار	add expressive words	يضيف كلمات تعبيرية
show respect	يُظهر الاحترام	connect hearts	يربط القلوب
treasure friendship	يقدر الصداقة	solve problems	يحل المشكلات
make sense	منطقي / مفهوم	follow a strict routine	يلتزم بنظام صارم
make eye contact	يجري تواصلًا بصريًا	exchange program	برنامج تبادل
promote peace	يعزز السلام	exchange goods	يتبادل بضائع
promote values	يعزز القيم	respect opinions	يحترم الآراء

Expressions & Prepositions

for instance	على سبيل المثال	across borders	عبر الحدود
native tongues	اللغات الأم	in return	في المقابل
build bridges with words	يقرب بين الناس بالكلام	jot down	يدون / يكتب بسرعة
make the world feel closer	يجعل العالم يبدو أقرب	face to face	وجهاً لوجه
lost in translation	يفقد المعنى أثناء الترجمة	cultural identity	الهوية الثقافية
cross-cultural experience	تجربة عابرة للثقافات	lead to	يؤدي إلى
bring people together	يجمع الناس	digital communication	التواصل الرقمي
listen with empathy	يستمع بتعاطف	means of communication	وسائل التواصل
Language is a bridge between minds and hearts		تعتبر اللغة جسر بين العقول والقلوب	

Definitions

empathy	تعاطف	▶ understanding how other people feel
identity	هوية	▶ who a person is and what makes them special
curiosity	فضول	▶ wanting to know or learn new things
translation	ترجمة	▶ the process of changing words from one language into another
confuse	يربك	▶ to mix things up so that they are not clear or easy to understand
misunderstanding	سوء فهم	▶ a failure to understand something correctly
preserve	يحافظ على / يحفظ	▶ to keep something safe and not damage it
interrupt	يقاطع	▶ to stop someone while they are speaking or doing something

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
empathy	تعاطف	compassion, understanding, sensitivity	indifference, apathy, coldness
curiosity	فضول	wonder, interest, eagerness	indifference, disinterest, apathy
preserve	يحافظ على	protect, save, maintain	destroy, ruin, neglect
confident	واثق	self-assured, bold, certain	insecure, unsure, timid
open-minded	متفتح	tolerant, accepting, flexible	narrow-minded, prejudiced
respect	احترام / يحترم	honor, value, admire	disrespect, ignore, insult
global	عالمي	worldwide, international, universal	local, national, regional
misunderstand	يسئ يفهم	misinterpret, misconceive, confuse	understand, comprehend, interpret
confuse	يربك	puzzle, bewilder, mix up	clarify, explain, simplify
interrupt	يقاطع	disturb, break in, interfere	continue, maintain, respect
deep	عميق	profound, intense, thoughtful	shallow, superficial, light
alive	حي	living, active, energetic	dead, lifeless, inactive

Unit 8



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
promote	يُروج / يُشجع	promotion	ترويج	promotional	ترويجي
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	قابل للحل
preserve	يحافظ على	preservation	حفاظ / صون	preserved	محفوظ
engage	يشارك	engagement	مشاركة	engaging	جذاب
transform	يحول	transformation	تحول	transformative	تحويلي
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	تعبيري
commemorate	يحيي ذكرى	commemoration	إحياء ذكرى	commemorative	تذكاري
misunderstand	يسن فهم	misunderstanding	سوء فهم	misunderstood	أسيء فهمه



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

device	جهاز	advice	نصيحة
preserve	يحافظ على	reserve	يحجز
cheer	يهتف / يشجع	cheerful	مريح / مبتهج
mind	عقل / ذهن (القدرة على التفكير)	brain	مخ (العضو الفيزيائي داخل الرأس)
translate	يترجم كتاباً (من لغة لأخرى)	interpret	يفسر شفهي (يوضح معنى كلام أو نص)
borders	حدود (بين الدول)	limits	حدود / قيود
chat	يلدش	cheat	يفش
interrupt	يقاطع	disrupt	يعرقل / يقاطع
conversation	محادثة	conservation	حفظ / صون
change	يغير / تغيير	exchange	يتبادل / تبادل
distant	بعيد	distance	مسافة
transform	يحول	transmit	ينقل / يرسل
message	رسالة	massage	تدليك
each other	بعضهما البعض (لشخصين)	one another	بعضهم البعض (لأكثر من شخصين)

confuse, confusing, confused & confusion

confuse (v)	يُربك / يخلط الأمور	Loud instructions can confuse the students.
confusing (adj)	مربك / محير	The test was really confusing for the students.
confused (adj)	مربك / مشوش	She felt confused after reading the instructions.
confusion (n)	ارتباك / لخبطة	There was a lot of confusion in the classroom.

contact, communicate & connect

contact	يتصل (تليفونيا)	I will contact you later.
communicate	يتواصل	I communicate with my friends on the internet.
connect	يوصل (شيء / يسلط)	Can I connect my printer to your computer?
connected with	متصل بـ (له علاقة معنوية)	Unemployment is connected with the economic problem.
connected to	متصل بـ (شيء اتصال مادي)	The printer is connected to the computer.

"Uniting People Through Communication"



What problems might appear in digital communication ?

Language is more than just words; it's a bridge between minds and hearts. Around the world, people use language to **share**⁽¹⁾ ideas, solve problems, and show **respect**⁽²⁾. Learning a new language opens a window to another way of thinking.



In the past, **trade**⁽³⁾ and travel helped people **exchange**⁽⁴⁾ not only **goods**⁽⁵⁾ but also languages. English became a global **means**⁽⁶⁾ of communication, but many native **tongues**⁽⁷⁾ still keep their cultural **heartbeat**⁽⁸⁾ alive. For instance, Arabic connects millions across **nations**⁽⁹⁾, helping them **preserve**⁽¹⁰⁾ their culture and communicate across **borders**⁽¹¹⁾.

Today, technology has **transformed**⁽¹²⁾ the way we connect. Students can video chat with friends from **distant**⁽¹³⁾ countries at the click of a **button**⁽¹⁴⁾. Yet, online messages can be lost in **translation**⁽¹⁵⁾ if sent without care, **tone**⁽¹⁶⁾, or facial **expression**⁽¹⁷⁾.

To truly build bridges with words, we must listen with **empathy**⁽¹⁸⁾ and **curiosity**⁽¹⁹⁾. Language learning teaches **patience**⁽²⁰⁾ and respect. When people understand one another's stories, they create **harmony**⁽²¹⁾. The future of communication depends **not only** on technology **but also** on the heart that beats behind every message.

- (١) يشارك
- (٢) احترام
- (٣) تجارة
- (٤) يتبادل
- (٥) بضائع
- (٦) وسيلة / طريقة
- (٧) اللغات الأم
- (٨) نبض القلب
- (٩) دول
- (١٠) يحافظ على
- (١١) حدود
- (١٢) غير / حول
- (١٣) بعيد
- (١٤) زر
- (١٥) ترجمة
- (١٦) نبرة / لهجة
- (١٧) تعبير وجهي
- (١٨) تعانف
- (١٩) فضول
- (٢٠) صبر
- (٢١) انسجام

Listening



Bassem

Rahma, have you **noticed** ⁽¹⁾ that some words connect people easily because their meanings are **clear** ⁽²⁾, while others **confuse** ⁽³⁾ people and **lead to** ⁽⁴⁾ **misunderstanding** ⁽⁵⁾?

(1) يلاحظ / ملاحظة

(2) واضح

(3) يربك / يغير

(4) يؤدي إلى

(5) سوء الفهم

Rahma

I notice that all the time. Sometimes I use a word that sounds right, but the listener understands something completely different. Why does this happen?

(6) التواصل

(7) قوي / مؤثر

(8) يهتم / عناية

(9) تعبير

(10) منطقي

(11) مربك

(12) مهذب

(13) نصيحة

(14) عبارة

(15) يتقاطع

(16) يكرر

(17) يعبر

(18) عرض تقديمي

(19) جسر

(20) يقلل

(21) ارتباطك

Bassem

It happens because **communication** ⁽⁶⁾ is **powerful** ⁽⁷⁾, but it also needs **care** ⁽⁸⁾. When we choose simple and clear words, we make the message easier to follow. Last week, my friends misunderstood me because I used an **informal expression** ⁽⁹⁾.

Rahma

That **makes sense** ⁽¹⁰⁾. So, words that connect are understandable and direct, while **confusing** ⁽¹¹⁾ words are unclear or have more than one meaning. Right?

Bassem

Exactly. And this is why **polite** ⁽¹²⁾ conversations matter. When we speak politely, people listen more carefully, and they feel comfortable asking questions.

Rahma

I like that. What **tips** ⁽¹³⁾ can you give me to make my conversation more polite?

Bassem

First, use **phrases** ⁽¹⁴⁾ like Could you explain that, please? and "I see your **point**. They show respect. Also, avoid **interrupting**, ⁽¹⁵⁾ because Audioscripts interrupting often leads to confusion.

Rahma

That's helpful. I sometimes interrupt without noticing. Do you have any tips to help me become a better listener?

Bassem

checks understanding by **repeating** ⁽¹⁶⁾ the main idea. Yesterday, I listened carefully to my teacher and it helped me understand a difficult topic.

Rahma

And what about becoming a better speaker? I want to **express** ⁽¹⁷⁾ my ideas clearly.

Bassem

A good speaker chooses simple vocabulary, speaks slowly and uses examples. When I explained my project last term, I used short sentences, and everyone understood me.

Rahma

That's true. I remember your **presentation** ⁽¹⁸⁾. It was clear and easy to follow.

Bassem

Thanks! And remember, communication can be a **bridge** ⁽¹⁹⁾ that connects the world if we use it wisely and choose the right words.

Rahma

I agree. Clear communication really brings people closer and **reduces** ⁽²⁰⁾ **confusion**. ⁽²¹⁾



Exercise 04 Key Vocabulary

1. A message can be lost in if we don't choose our words carefully. SB
 a. prediction b. isolation c. translation d. dictation
2. To live peacefully, people need to understand each other and create SB
 a. ignorance b. weakness c. dishonesty d. harmony
3. Good communication always needs respect and SB
 a. empathy b. conflict c. fight d. argument
4. Curiosity is the first step to SB
 a. poverty b. ruin c. destruction d. discovery
5. Technology helps people from different countries and share ideas easily.
 a. connect b. reject c. infect d. ignore
6. The teacher used a kind to make students feel comfortable in class.
 a. tune b. tube c. tone d. bone
7. Learning a new skill requires and regular practice over time.
 a. patience b. impatience c. quickness d. laziness
8. Too much information at once can learners and slow their progress.
 a. release b. confuse c. introduce d. please
9. A clear helps readers understand the original text better.
 a. station b. mention c. translation d. misunderstand
10. It is polite to wait and not someone while they are speaking.
 a. interrupt b. respect c. predict d. select
11. Education can lives by opening new opportunities for people.
 a. save b. perform c. transform d. make
12. encourages students to ask questions and explore new ideas.
 a. Curiosity b. Laziness c. Weakness d. Ignorance
13. define where one country ends and another begins.
 a. Marks b. Parks c. Boards d. Borders
14. Music is a powerful form of that shows emotions and feelings.
 a. expression b. infection c. fiction d. experiment
15. She wrote a blog to share her travel experiences with readers.
 a. boost b. post c. past d. paste
16. Kindness and honesty are important in a good friend.
 a. qualify b. quantities c. qualities d. equality
17. Every scientific helps us understand the world more clearly.
 a. foundation b. discovery c. discover d. recovery
18. allows us to understand and respect other people's feelings.
 a. Disrespect b. Dishonesty c. Safety d. Empathy



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

19. Learning different languages helps people build between cultures. **SB**
 a. spaces b. bridges c. rivers d. lakes
20. Arabic carries a deep cultural **SB**
 a. safety b. security c. identity d. identify
21. Language is an important means of between people around the world.
 a. population b. pollution c. prediction d. communication
22. Many countries trade and services to support their economies.
 a. population b. borders c. morals d. goods
23. English has become a language used in business and education.
 a. national b. global c. tiny d. limited
24. An informal helps people feel relaxed and friendly.
 a. cooperation b. conservation c. conversation d. university
25. Reading daily helps the grow stronger and think more clearly.
 a. mind b. remind c. feet d. brain
26. Life moves at a fast in modern cities.
 a. peace b. pace c. space d. recycle
27. An person listens to different ideas without judging others.
 a. urgent b. ugly c. open-minded d. informal
28. Language is an important for learning, communication, and cooperation.
 a. tomb b. tone c. tale d. tool
29. Traveling abroad can be a rich and meaningful.....
 a. connection b. experiment c. experience d. exercise
30. Countries exchange to support trade and daily needs.
 a. goods b. pods c. rocks d. soils
31. He greeted everyone with a voice and a big smile.
 a. difficult b. harsh c. tiny d. cheerful
32. She speaks French fluently because it is her language.
 a. narrative b. passive c. native d. relative
33. A polite makes communication more respectful.
 a. tone b. stone c. cone d. spoon
34. Sports events can people from different countries.
 a. block b. unite c. waste d. fight
35. Writing a diary helps with personal and growth.
 a. fiction b. prediction c. section d. reflection
36. Music feels like the of the culture.
 a. heartbeat b. deadline c. ball d. device

37. Schools promote values such as respect and
a. misunderstanding **b.** distrust **c.** dishonesty **d.** empathy
38. We must our language and cultural heritage.
a. reserve **b.** preserve **c.** survive **d.** serve
39. Art and language are ways to share emotions.
a. expressive **b.** mental **c.** economical **d.** political
40. She explained the idea and everyone understood it.
a. passively **b.** secretly **c.** perfectly **d.** noisily
41. The teacher gave a/an lesson that students enjoyed.
a. horrible **b.** boring **c.** ugly **d.** engaging
42. Many people their family traditions and beliefs all the time.
a. flaw **b.** treasure **c.** press **d.** intend
43. Students ideas during group work to help each other.
a. exchange **b.** change **c.** recycle **d.** print
44. Practice helps students become fluent and more speakers.
a. irresponsible **b.** confident **c.** passive **d.** negative
45. Food and music are important parts of identity.
a. musical **b.** plural **c.** cultural **d.** informal
46. Festivals and traditions keep the culture for future generations.
a. arise **b.** life **c.** live **d.** alive
47. Please do not me while I am speaking.
a. effect **b.** pollute **c.** consider **d.** interrupt



Exercise on

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

48. True friends friendship and care for each other.
a. correct **b.** treasure **c.** measure **d.** stress
49. Kind words can hearts and build trust.
a. make **b.** connect **c.** use **d.** blend
50. Students ideas during group discussions in class.
a. stare **b.** care **c.** share **d.** draw
51. Music and art can harmony among people.
a. give **b.** take **c.** do **d.** create
52. An open-minded person opinions different from their own.
a. respects **b.** rejects **c.** fights **d.** refuses
53. Teamwork helps people problems faster and better.
a. serve **b.** solve **c.** develop **d.** prove
54. Writers expressive words to make their messages more lively.
a. feel **b.** expand **c.** odd **d.** add

55. Some jokes get in translation between languages.

- a. lost b. missed c. earned d. locked

56. During the meeting, she jotted new words in her notebook.

- a. out b. down c. off d. of

57. We can send messages across the world at the of a button.

- a. look b. lock c. clock d. click

58. Learning a new language opens a window other cultures.

- a. on b. in c. to d. for

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

59. We must preserve our natural heritage to maintain our cultural identity. The antonym of "preserve" is

SB R 3

- a. protect b. keep c. destroy d. guard e. neglect

60. A good teacher shows empathy toward his students. The synonym of the underlined word "empathy" is

- a. kindness b. hatred c. understanding d. anger e. selfishness

61. Children show curiosity about new things. The synonym of the underlined word "curiosity" is

- a. fear b. boredom c. laziness d. interest e. eagerness

62. We should preserve our culture and language. The synonym of the underlined word "preserve" is

- a. protect b. destroy c. waste d. save e. lose

63. After much practice, she became confident in speaking. The synonym of the underlined word "confident" is

- a. sure b. brave c. nervous d. afraid e. weak

64. Traditions keep culture alive. The antonym of the underlined word "alive" is ...

- a. active b. dead c. lifeless d. moving e. fresh

65. Please do not interrupt the speaker. The antonym of the underlined word "interrupt" is

- a. maintain b. continue c. stop d. break e. disturb

66. He has deep love for his country. The synonym of the underlined word "deep" is

- a. shallow b. small c. weak d. great e. strong

67. Loud noise can confuse students. The antonym of "confuse" is

- a. puzzle b. disturb c. clarify d. explain e. mix

68. An open-minded person respects different ideas. The synonym of the underlined word "open-minded" is

- a. closed b. flexible c. tolerant d. narrow e. stubborn

69. The teacher used a polite tone to explain the lesson. The antonym of the underlined word "polite" is

- a. rude b. gentle c. friendly d. harsh e. kind

70. It is important to be polite when speaking to elders. The synonym of the underlined word "polite" is

- a. careless b. respectful c. courteous d. rude e. impolite

Blog Post

تدوينية / منشور مدونة



Definition of the blog post

- ★ A blog post is an article or piece of writing published on a blog (an online journal or website).

التدوينية هي مقال أو قطعة كتابة تُنشر على مدونة (مذكرات أو موقع إلكتروني).



Blog posts are usually

- ★ **Informal:** Like talking to a friend, but maybe a bit more organized.
غير رسمية: مثل التحدث إلى صديق، لكن منظمة قليلاً.
- ★ **Engaging:** They want to catch the reader's attention.
جذابة: تهدف لجذب اهتمام القارئ.
- ★ **About a specific topic:** They share information, opinions, or personal experiences.
حول موضوع محدد: تقدم معلومات، آراء، أو تجارب شخصية.
- ★ **Not too long:** Easy to read online.
قصيرة: سهلة القراءة على الإنترنت.



Structure of the Blog Post;

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1) Title
العنوان | It should be catchy and short to make people want to click and read.
يجب أن يكون قصيرة وجذاب لجعل الناس يرغبون في الضغط على التدوينية وقراءتها. |
| 2) Introduction
المقدمة | It is the first paragraph to introduce your topic, hook the reader and states the main idea.
هي الفقرة الأولى لتقديم الموضوع وجذب القارئ وتوضيح الفكرة الرئيسية. |
| 3) Main Body
الجزء الرئيسي | They give examples, details, facts or statistics to support the main idea.
تقدم أمثلة، تفاصيل، حقائق، أو إحصائيات لتدعيم الفكرة الرئيسية. |
| 4) Conclusion
الخاتمة | It is the last paragraph in the blog post to summarise and restates the main idea.
آخر فقرة في التدوينية لتلخص وإعادة صياغة الفكرة الرئيسية. |

When writing a blog post, you should : عند كتابة منشور على مدونة يجب عليك

- ★ **Use a friendly and conversational tone** استخدم نبرة ودية وحوارية
writing in a relaxed way, like talking to someone you know, using everyday words and expressions.
الكتابة بطريقة مريحة، مثل التحدث مع شخص تعرفه، باستخدام الكلمات والتعبيرات اليومية.
- ★ **Begin with a greeting** ابدأ بتحيةة
share personal feelings and real experiences, and end with a reflection or message for readers.
شارك مشاعرك الشخصية وتجاربك الحقيقية، وأنه المنشور بتأمل أو رسالة للقراء.
- ★ **Add emojis or expressive words** أضف رموز تعبيرية أو كلمات تعبيرية
to make your post lively and engaging!
لجعل منشورك حياً وجذاباً!

Blog Post Model



Last year I joined a youth exchange program and met a wonderful student from Indonesia. Since then we've been exchanging emails every week sharing our daily stories and traditions. I was amazed to discover how much we have in common we both treasure friendship kindness and family. She taught me some cheerful Indonesian greetings and in return, I shared a few Arabic phrases with her. Through our chats, I realized that language isn't just words it's a bridge that connects hearts. This friendship has helped me grow more open-minded respectful and confident when meeting people from different cultures. It's truly exciting to learn how small conversations can make the world feel closer.



Exercise 04

Writing

- A blog post usually begins with a friendly
 a. greeting b. meeting c. dialogue d. description
- Emojis can make a blog post more
 a. dull b. lively c. secret d. boring
- A blog post often shares personal and experiences.
 a. endings b. introductions c. stories d. CVs
- Bloggers use simple to make posts easy to read.
 a. news b. windows c. dialogues d. words
- A friendly and conversational is important in a blog post.
 a. song b. tone c. tune d. bone
- A blog post can end with a meaningful
 a. area b. message c. noun d. massage
- Readers enjoy posts that are engaging and
 a. slow b. empty c. lively d. heavy
- Pictures in a blog post make it more
 a. dull b. boring c. dark d. interesting
- A blog post may include jokes or words.
 a. boring b. slow c. expressive d. heavy
- Readers like posts that share real-life
 a. walls b. pens c. chairs d. experiences
- Blog posts often include
 a. charts and data tables only b. personal opinions and experiences
 c. only references and citations d. none of the above
- A blog post is usually written in
 a. formal, academic style b. casual, personal style
 c. legal style d. poetic style
- When you conclude writing your blog post, you should
 a. summarize its content c. make the end open b. develop the main idea d. put a hook
- What is the main purpose of a catchy title in a blog post?
 a. To summarize the entire article b. To attract readers to click and read the post
 c. To add an extra paragraph d. To provide long examples
- The main body of a blog post should be
 a. Very short and without details b. Only questions
 c. Just an introduction to the title d. Full of ideas and details to explain points
- What is the purpose of a hook in the introduction?
 a. To make the reader bored
 b. To add pictures only
 c. To attract the reader's attention and start reading
 d. To summarize the conclusion

A Vocabulary & Structure

- Ali made a kind to show he supported me.
a. honor b. link c. peace d. gesture
- Egypt tries to make prevail in the whole world.
a. honor b. link c. peace d. gesture
- When you usually finish studying your lessons?
a. are b. have c. do d. does
- sometimes causes big problems.
a. Harmony b. Identity c. Misunderstanding d. Translation

B Translation

ان وقت الفراغ كنز في حياتنا إذا أحسننا استغلاله في أنشطة مفيدة مثل ممارسة رياضة أو هواية أو المشاركة في العمل التطوعي.

- Free time is a treasure in our lives if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.
- Free time is a treasure in our plays if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.
- Free time is a treasure in our movies if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.
- Free time is a treasure in our programs if we use it well in useful activities such as practicing sports, a hobby, or participating in voluntary work.

C Writing

Write a blog post of about (120-150) words about

The importance of learning foreign languages



Exercise 24

Translation

القناطر ٢٠٢٤

١. يشجع التعليم على التعاون والتفكير النقدي لأنهما من المهارات الأساسية اللازمة في أسواق العمل الآن.

- Education encourages co-operation and critical thinking as they are the two essential skills needed in job markets.
 - Education encourage co-operation and critical thinking as they are the two essential skills needed in job markets.
 - Education encourages operation and critical thinking as they are the two essential skills needed in job markets.
 - Education encourages co-operation and critical thinking as they are the two essential skilled needed in job markets.
- We should bring up children in good manners to be good citizens. So, they will be able to achieve progress and development.

صان العجر ٢٠٢٤

- علينا أن نربي الاطفال على الاخلاق الحميدة ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين حتى يكونوا قادرين على تحقيق التقدم والتنمية.
- علينا أن نربي الاطفال على الاخلاق الجيدة ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين حتى يكونوا قادرين على تحقيق التقدم والتنمية.
- علينا أن نربي الاطفال على الاخلاق الجيدة حتى لا يكونوا مواطنين صالحين حتى يكونوا قادرين على تحقيق التقدم والتنمية.
- علينا أن نربي الاطفال على الاخلاق الحميدة ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين حتى لا يكونوا قادرين على تحقيق التقدم والتنمية.



General Exercises

on

Unit 8



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- We need harmony in our society to live peacefully. The opposite of harmony is
a. unity b. balance c. agreement d. disagreement e. conflict
- English is a global language. The synonym of the underlined word "global" is
a. worldwide b. international c. local d. private e. limited

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A good friend shows by listening and caring about others' feelings.
a. cruelty b. dishonesty c. empathy d. bullying
- A small can cause big problems if people do not talk calmly.
a. misunderstanding b. understanding c. harmony d. empathy
- Education can people's lives and give them better chance.
a. transmit b. transform c. translate d. weaken
- Emails and video calls are modern of communication in work and study.
a. roads b. tasks c. actions d. means
- Culture plays an important role in shaping a person's
a. problem b. conflict c. identity d. difficulty
- His about science led him to read many books and watch educational videos.
a. curiosity b. mistake c. opportunity d. benefit
- When he was in Cairo, he always along the Nile.
a. walked b. was walking c. walks d. 'll walk
- He used to be a taxi driver. Now he
a. doesn't b. didn't c. isn't d. hasn't
- The police him while he was leaving the scene of the crime.
a. arrests b. will arrest c. has arrested d. arrested
- at home when she smashed the glass window?
a. Were you being b. Did you be c. Were you d. Be you
- Emojis can make a blog post more
a. dull b. lively c. secret d. boring
- A blog post may include jokes or words.
a. boring b. slow c. expressive d. heavy

B

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

القراءة ٢٠٢٢

Shopping is a necessary part of life, which very few people can avoid. The weekend is usually a good time to go shopping because people have free time from work. At this time, the shops are usually busy because people try to get the best items for the lowest price before they run out of stock. Some people go shopping more regularly than other people to browse products in shops even when they do not have much money. This is known as window shopping and allows people to plan ahead and save for the things they want to buy in the future or wait for the items to drop in price. Some people believe that the more expensive the item, the better the quality, but this is not always true. Sometimes shopping can be very stressful when choosing a gift to buy other people for a special occasion. It is common to buy a gift voucher so that a friend or loved one can go shopping themselves at their own convenience. Shopping online is often popular with people who have a busy lifestyle. People are able to order their necessary and luxury items from the comfort of their own home, or even on the move. Delivery is usually free and items are often cheaper than in shops on the high street. The only real problem is that the item description and quality may be different

than they hoped for. People who go to shops to do their own shopping often use self-service payment machines.

- Why is the weekend a good time to go shopping?
 - It is very busy on the weekend.
 - People are free from work.
 - Things are usually expensive
 - The shops are closed.
- What are people doing when they go shopping just to have a look and not to buy?
 - Do nothing
 - Window shopping
 - They have much money
 - Looking for the best quality
- What do some people usually think about items of better quality?
 - They are cheaper
 - They are harder to find
 - They are more expensive
 - They are on sale
- When can shopping be "stressful"?
 - When shops are about to close
 - When it is very busy
 - When buying a gift for someone
 - At the weekend
- The underlined word "they" refers to
 - shoppers
 - shopping places
 - prices
 - items
- According to the passage, the synonym of the underlined word "luxury" is
 - richness and comfort
 - economy
 - misery
 - prevent
- What is the best title for this passage?
 - Shopping nowadays
 - Stressful shopping
 - Supermarkets
 - Different kinds of supermarkets



Translation

A: Translation into Arabic:

- Over-population is considered one of the most dangerous problems facing any nation. It affects the number of the available jobs.

- تعتبر الزيادة السكانية من أخطر المشاكل التي تواجه أي قارة. حيث يؤثر على عدد الوظائف المتاحة.
- تعتبر الزيادة السكانية من أخطر المشاكل التي تواجه أي دولة. حيث يؤثر على عدد الوظائف المتاحة.
- تعتبر الزيادة السكانية من أخطر المشاكل التي تواجه أي دولة. حيث يؤثر على طبيعة الوظائف المتاحة.
- تعتبر الزيادة السكانية من أكبر المشاكل التي تواجه أي دولة. حيث يؤثر على عدد الوظائف المتاحة.

٢. تولي الحكومة اهتماماً عظيماً برعاية الإنسان، يعد مشروع تطوير الريف وإعادة بناء العشوائيات خير دليل على ذلك.

- The government gives great attention to human well-being, and the project of developing the countryside and rebuilding slums is the best proof of that.
- The government gives great attention to human well-being, and the project of replacing the countryside and build slums is the best proof of that.
- The government gives great attention to human well-being, and the subject of developing the countryside and rebuild slums is the best cause of that.
- The government gives great attention to human well-being, and the project of developing the countryside and rebuilding slums is the best proof of that.

Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- She played the piano when she was a child. (used to)
- He doesn't play tennis at all. (never)

Answer the following questions:

- What is the meaning behind Santiago's repeated lion dream?
- What do you think the villagers learned about bravery?

Write a blog post (150) words about

"a time when you communicated with someone from another culture."



Skills

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف



1) Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٥

- Salem : Do you think it is good or bad thing to move to a new school?
 Sayed : ① What about you?
 Salem : I agree with you. ②?
 Sayed : I can contact them through emails and texting.
 Salem : ③?
 Sayed : If I have any difficulty in my new school, I will ask my teachers' help.
 Salem : I wish you the best of luck. How about meeting at the club this afternoon.
 Sayed : ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٥

David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was usual for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as they pay adults. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were so small that they could go under machines when they broke down. They were often miserable. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity to improve their lives. However, some children learned skills when they worked. They were the lucky ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How old was David Copperfield when he went to work?

.....

2. Why did factories like to have children working for them?

.....

3. What did the child do if he was small?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to

a. parents b. children c. machines d. adults

5. In the 1800s, it was for children to work in England.

a. usual b. unusual c. rarely d. abnormal

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٥

Performing prayers protects an individual from all sorts of malice, hatred and vices.

.....

B. Translate into English: (1 Mark)

القاهرة ٢٠٢٥

هل سبق لك أن قضيت أجازة الصيف مع أصدقائك خارج القاهرة؟

.....



Unit 9

Building a Better Future

Learning Outcomes

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| Reading | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Identify main ideas and supporting details in texts about career changes, future jobs, and personal growth. - Use appropriate vocabulary to compare different career paths, workplace environments, and the impact of lifelong learning. |
| language | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Use the Present Perfect to show that a recent action can influence or be important now or later. - Correctly form sentences using the present perfect to describe people's experiences. |
| Listening | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Listen for specific information in conversations or audio texts about future jobs, personal growth, and training programs. |
| Writing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Write a clear and coherent CV showing personal data, experiences and skills. |
| Speaking | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Discuss personal career goals, training experiences, and workplace expectations. - Make comparisons between personal experiences and examples from texts. |

Unit 9

Building a Better Future

Lessons

- 1 The Courage to Change
- 2 The Jobs of Tomorrow



Key Vocabulary

artificial (adj)	صناعي	assistant (n)	مساعد	flexible (adj)	مرن / قابل للتكيف
empathy (n)	تعاطف	fair pay (n)	أجر عادل / مرتب مناسب	virtual reality (n)	واقع افتراضي
replace (v)	يستبدل	supportive (adj)	داعم / مشجع	solar (adj)	شمسي
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	achievement (n)	إنجاز	stable (adj)	مستقر
adapt (v)	يتكيف / يكتيف	volunteer (n/v)	متطوع / يتطوع	training (n)	تدريب
decent work (n)	عمل لائق	creativity (n)	إبداع	inspire (v)	يلهم
dignity (n)	كرامة	opportunity (n)	فرصة	respect (n/v)	إحترام / يحترم
potential (n/adj)	قدرة / إمكانية / محتمل	open-minded (adj)	منفتح الذهن	courage (n)	شجاعة

Main Vocabulary

offer (n/v)	عرض / يقدم	qualities (n)	صفات / خصال	community center (n)	مركز مجتمعي
workshop (n)	ورشة	fitness (n)	لياقة	3-D world (n)	عالم ثلاثي الأبعاد
lifestyle (n)	إسلوب حياة	fashion (n)	موضة	stressful (adj)	مرهق / مسبب للتوتر
teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	accounting (n)	محاسبة	business (n)	تجارة / عمل
workplace (n)	مكان عمل	growth (n)	نمو	manage (v)	يدير
flexibility (n)	مرونة	designer (n)	مصمم	develop (v)	يطور
competitive (adj)	تنافسي	temporary (adj)	مؤقت	career (n)	مهنة
promote (v)	يرقي / يروج	demand (n/v)	طلب / يطلب	skill (n)	مهارة
personal (adj)	شخصي	artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	face (n/v)	وجه / يواجه
disappear (v)	يختفي	solar engineer	مهندس طاقة شمسية	package (n)	طرد
finance (n/v)	تمويل / يمول	care worker (n)	عامل رعاية	green job	وظيفة صديقة للبيئة
emotions (n)	مشاعر	reward (n/v)	مكافأة / يكافئ	expert (n)	خبير
challenges (n)	تحديات	position (n)	منصب / موضع	postman (n)	ساعي بريد
appreciated (adj)	مقدّر / محل تقدير	planet (n)	كوكب	success (n)	نجاح
motivate (v)	يحفّز	wind-energy expert (n)	خبير طاقة الرياح	drone delivery pilot (n)	قائد توصيل بطائرة بدون طيار
attend (v)	يحضر				

Collocations

aim higher	يطمح للأفضل	develop skills	يطور مهارات
offer workshops	يقدم ورش عمل	start business	يبدأ مشروع تجاري
build a stable future	يبنى مستقبل مستقر	feel valued	يشعر بالتقدير
attend a training program	يلتحق ببرنامج تدريبي	change a career	يغير المهنة
join a training program	ينضم إلى برنامج تدريبي	feel proud of	يشعر بالفخر
have job opportunities	لديه فرص عمل	send packages	يرسل الطرود
promote decent work	يدعم العمل اللائق	replace creativity	يستبدل الإبداع

Expressions & Prepositions

personal growth	نمو شخصي	known for	معروف بـ
take on new challenges	يقبل تحديات جديدة	apply for	يتقدم لـ
office assistant position	وظيفة مساعد مكتب	volunteer at	يتطوع في
supportive work environment	بيئة عمل داعمة	believe in	يؤمن بـ
travel abroad	يسافر للخارج	grow up	يكبر
in high demand	في طلب مرتفع / متزايد	adapt to	يتكيف مع
clothing factory	مصنع ملابس	focus on	يركز على
virtual-reality designers	مصمموا الواقع الافتراضي	based on	قائم على

Definitions

adapt	يتكيف / يتأقلم	to change so you fit a new situation or purpose
virtual	افتراضي / رقمي	something that exists in a digital or computer-created form, not physically
artificial	صناعي	made by humans, not natural
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	a flying machine controlled remotely
empathy	تعاطف	the ability to feel what others are experiencing
replace	يستبدل	to put something or someone in the place of something or someone
decent work	عمل لائق	work that gives people fair pay, safety, and dignity
potential	قدرة	the ability to become better or more successful in the future
a green job	وظيفة صديقة للبيئة	a job that helps protect the environment
a solar engineer	مهندس طاقة شمسية	a person who designs and works with systems that use energy from the sun

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
adapt	يتكيف	adjust, modify, change, fit	resist, refuse, reject
virtual	افتراضي	online, digital, electronic	real, physical, actual
stable	ثابت / مستقر	steady, secure, firm, constant	unstable, temporary, shaky
fair	عادل / منصف	just, honest, equal	unfair, unjust, dishonest
supportive	داعم / مساند	helpful, encouraging, caring,	discouraging, uncaring
valued	مقدر / مهم	appreciated, respected, treasured	ignored, unimportant, neglected
potential	محتمل / قدرة كامنة	ability, possibility, capacity	weakness, impossibility, inability
achievement	إنجاز	success, accomplishment, victory	failure, loss, defeat
creativity	إبداع	imagination, innovation, talent	routine, imitation, boredom
opportunity	فرصة	chance, occasion, possibility	risk, problem, obstacle
artificial	صناعي / غير طبيعي	man-made, fake, unreal	natural, real, genuine
open-minded	منفتح الذهن	tolerant, broad-minded, understanding	narrow-minded, intolerant, biased
flexible	مرن / قابل للتكيف	adaptable, adjustable, easy-going	rigid, inflexible, strict

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
develop	يطور	development	تطوير	developed	متطور
train	يدرّب	training	تدريب	trained	مدرب
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	تواصلي
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهّم
believe	يؤمن	belief	اعتقاد / إيمان	believable	قابل للتصديق
apply	يتقدم / يقدم	application	تقديم / طلب	applicable	قابل للتطبيق
support	يدعم	support	دعم	supportive	داعم
value	يقدر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

fair	عادل	fear	خوف
position	منصب	job	وظيفة
supportive	داعم	sensitive	حساس
proud	فخور	pride	فخر
complete	يكمل / كامل	compete	يتنافس
nearby	قريب مكانياً	nearly	تقريباً
hard	بشدة / يحد / صعب	hardly	بالكاد
every day	كل يوم (ظرف زمان)	everyday	يومي (صفة)
center	مركز	century	قرن
prepare	يستعد	repair	يصلح
stressful	مسبب للتوتر / مرهق	stressed	متوتر / مضغوط نفسياً
valued	مقدّر / محل تقدير	valuable	ذو قيمة / قيم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح
soft skills	مهارات شخصية / سلوكية	hard skills	مهارات تقنية / عملية
potential	محتمل / قدرة كامنة	potent	قوي / فعال / شديد التأثير
artificial	صناعي / مصنوع بواسطة الإنسان وليس طبيعياً	industrial	صناعي / متعلق بالصناعة
virtual	افتراضي / رقمي	visible	مرئي

grow, growth & growing

grow (v)

ينمو ▶ Rania **grew** up in a small town.

growth (n)

نمو ▶ She experienced a lot of personal **growth**.

growing (adj)

نامي / متزايد ▶ She enjoys her **growing** skills.

stable, stability & stabilize

stable (adj)	ثابت / مستقر	She wants a stable job with regular hours.
stability (n)	استقرار	Political stability is important for economic growth.
stabilize (v)	يثبت	The government is trying to stabilize prices.

compete, competition, competitive & competitor

compete	يتنافس	Athletes from all over the world compete in the Olympics.
competition	منافسة	There is a lot of competition among students for the top prize.
competitive	تنافسي	She is very competitive and always wants to win.
competitor	منافس	Our main competitor has just launched a new product.

job, position, career & work

job	وظيفة	He got a new job last month.
position	منصب / وظيفة محددة	She applied for a teaching position .
career	المسار المهني طوال الحياة	Teaching is her career .
work	عمل / مكان العمل	He goes to work every day.

cloth, clothe, clothing & clothes

cloth	قماش (المادة)	This cloth is very soft
clothe	يلبس / يكسو	The rich should clothe the poor in winter.
clothing	الملابس (بصفة عامة) لا تعد	Warm clothing is important in winter.
clothes	ملابس (جمع)	I bought new clothes yesterday.





"The Courage to Change"



Read the following passage. What does "work" mean to Rania?

Rania grew up in a small town and started working at a local clothing factory after finishing school. She enjoyed her job and worked hard, but she dreamed of developing her skills and taking on new challenges. She wanted to find a job that would help her learn more and build a stable⁽¹⁾ future for herself and her family.



- (١) مستقر
- (٢) تدريب
- (٣) تواصل
- (٤) عمل جماعي
- (٥) نيلهم
- (٦) إمكانيات
- (٧) دورة
- (٨) وظيفة / منصب
- (٩) أجر عادل
- (١٠) داعم / مساند
- (١١) إنجازات
- (١٢) يتطلع
- (١٣) شابات
- (١٤) عمل لائق

One day, she joined a community training⁽²⁾ program that offered workshops on communication⁽³⁾, teamwork⁽⁴⁾, and computer skills. The program inspired⁽⁵⁾ her to aim higher and believe in her potential⁽⁶⁾. After completing the course⁽⁷⁾, Rania applied for an office assistant⁽⁸⁾ position at a nearby company known for its fair pay⁽⁹⁾ and supportive⁽¹⁰⁾ work environment.

Today, Rania enjoys her work, continues to learn every day, and feels proud of her achievements⁽¹¹⁾. She also volunteers⁽¹²⁾ at the same community center, helping young women⁽¹³⁾ prepare for their first jobs. Work should make you feel valued, she says. For me, decent work⁽¹⁴⁾ means learning, growing, and helping others succeed.



Listening



Airport Announcements

In the future, many of today's jobs will change or even disappear. Technology and artificial intelligence are creating new types of work. For example, some people will become drone delivery pilots, sending packages quickly and safely. Others may work as virtual reality designers, creating 3-D worlds for education or entertainment.

Green jobs will also grow. Solar engineers and wind-energy experts will help protect the planet by using clean energy. People who understand the environment will be in high demand.



However, not all future jobs are about science or machines. Care workers, teachers, and artists will still be important because creativity and empathy cannot be replaced by robots.

Experts say that students should learn to adapt, solve problems, and keep learning new skills. The future job market will, reward people who are flexible and open-minded.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Rania's love of learning was her greatest SB
 a. injustice b. fear c. achievement d. anger
2. She received important through the community program. SB
 a. training b. train c. trainer d. mistake
3. She has a teacher who always encourages her.
 a. solar b. supportive c. discouraging d. stable
4. These flowers look real, but they are
 a. supportive b. artificial c. stable d. lunar
5. He wants a/an job with a regular income.
 a. supportive b. solar c. awful d. stable
6. Animals must to survive in cold weather.
 a. replace b. inspire c. adapt d. volunteer
7. Good teachers students to work harder.
 a. volunteer b. adapt c. replace d. inspire
8. Many students to help poor people.
 a. adapt b. replace c. volunteer d. inspire
9. A good nurse shows to patients.
 a. opportunity b. achievement c. empathy d. hatred
10. Everyone deserves that pays fairly and respects their rights.
 a. decent work b. traffic c. empathy d. creativity
11. The teacher believes that every student has the to succeed.
 a. mistake b. noise c. furniture d. potential
12. Students learn science using technology.
 a. virtual reality b. opportunity c. dignity d. respect
13. Students must show to their teachers.
 a. injustice b. fear c. respect d. anger
14. This job is a great to learn new skills.
 a. opportunity b. danger c. loss d. creativity
15. The word means to change so you fit a new situation or purpose.
 a. replace b. adapt c. drone d. artificial
16. Something that exists in a digital or computer-created form, not physically, is called
 a. empathy b. virtual c. drone d. adapt
17. A/An can be controlled from the ground and fly without a pilot.
 a. engine b. drone c. vehicle d. assistant
18. Being helps students learn from different cultures and ideas.
 a. open-minded b. strict c. potential d. stressful
19. Successful workers are enough to deal with new problems and challenges.
 a. careless b. nervous c. flexible d. strict

20. Some foods contain colors that are not natural and may affect health.
 a. fresh b. healthy c. original d. artificial
21. She works as an office and helps the manager every day.
 a. driver b. assistant c. customer d. owner
22. Drawing and writing stories help students develop their
 a. reward b. silence c. habit d. creativity
23. It of you to stand up for what is right, even when others disagree with you.
 a. community b. curiosity c. package d. courage
24. Decent work helps people live with and confidence.
 a. obedience b. dignity c. demand d. danger



Exercise 09 Main Vocabulary

SB

25. Rana in improving her speaking skill after the language course.
 a. felt b. succeeded c. felt d. managed
26. He improved his computer by practicing every day after school.
 a. courage b. skill c. dignity d. empathy
27. Success is often the best after years of effort and patience.
 a. review b. courage c. reward d. danger
28. He got promoted to a higher after proving his ability and leadership skills.
 a. position b. work c. empathy d. career
29. Modern technology allows drones to deliver a small quickly.
 a. review b. workshop c. position d. package
30. Working in renewable energy is considered a/an job that helps protect nature.
 a. office b. green c. private d. risky
31. The increasing population has created a strong for food and water.
 a. cancellation b. position c. demand d. potential
32. Being a/an is a green job that helps reduce pollution and protect the environment.
 a. solar engineer b. sales assistant c. civil engineer d. technician
33. The famous created a new fashion collection inspired by traditional culture.
 a. editor b. assistant c. manager d. designer
34. Regular exercise helps improve physical and overall health.
 a. habit b. fitness c. dignity d. diet
35. Good helps students finish group projects successfully.
 a. teamwork b. illness c. distance d. weather
36. You need good to work as an office assistant.
 a. old clothes b. cooking recipes c. loud music d. computer skills
37. Ali is very He always wants to win every game.
 a. careless b. sleepy c. competitive d. empty
38. Students face many when they prepare for exams.
 a. pictures b. challenges c. songs d. games
39. Good teachers their students to work harder.
 a. confuse b. stop c. forget d. motivate

40. Winning the prize was a great for the team.
 a. failure b. mistake c. success d. accident
41. Daily exercise helps improve your
 a. noise b. fitness c. anger d. confusion
42. He studies to learn how to manage money.
 a. history b. art c. finance d. music
43. He is good at numbers, so he chose as his career.
 a. cooking b. accounting c. driving d. painting
44. Children need to express their freely to stay healthy.
 a. cars b. emotions c. buildings d. computers
45. A/An helps elderly people live comfortably at home.
 a. care worker b. engineer c. driver d. teacher
46. The new offers classes, sports, and events for local residents.
 a. workshop b. hospital c. community center d. drone
47. Preparing for exams can be very for students.
 a. stressful b. easy c. relaxing d. quiet
48. He got a/an job during the summer holidays.
 a. permanent b. temporary c. constant d. endless
49. Please keep your information safe online.
 a. personal b. public c. shared d. common
50. The company wants to its new product with a big campaign.
 a. ignore b. promote c. hide d. cancel
51. He started his own last year and it is growing fast.
 a. business b. hobby c. journey d. vacation
52. Working from home gives employees more in their schedules.
 a. flexibility b. rigidity c. boredom d. confusion



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

58

53. It is important for everyone to feel and appreciated.
 a. injustice b. ignored c. anger d. valued
54. Students need to skills to succeed in their future jobs.
 a. sleep b. develop c. run d. eat
55. If you want to succeed, you should always higher.
 a. wash b. jump c. aim d. eat
56. Saving money and studying hard can help you a stable future.
 a. laugh b. build c. jump d. sleep
57. Rania wants to new challenges at her workplace.
 a. take on b. take off c. take away d. take care
58. Ahmed always tries to on his studies.
 a. create b. join c. focus d. grow
59. The designer wants to 3-D worlds for his project.
 a. join b. create c. apply d. believe

60. Sara will a course next semester to improve her skills.
 a. focus b. damage c. compete d. join
Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.
61. An open-minded person listens to different opinions. The synonym of the underlined word "open-minded" is
 a. tolerant b. understanding c. narrow-minded d. stubborn e. closed
62. Having a flexible schedule allows students to change plans. The antonym of "flexible" is
 a. rigid b. adaptable c. open d. adjustable e. strict
63. Students attended virtual classes during online learning. The synonym of the underlined word "virtual" is
 a. medical b. online c. digital d. physical e. actual
64. If you don't adapt to changes, you may fall behind others. The antonym of "adapt" is
 a. resist b. adjust c. modify d. refuse e. change
65. Some people cannot adapt to new situations. The synonym of the underlined word "adapt" is
 a. reject b. refuse c. resist d. change e. adjust
66. The environment at work is stable. The synonym of the word "stable" is
 a. shaky b. constant c. temporary d. steady e. insecure
67. The teacher is very fair with all students. The opposite of the word "fair" is
 a. unfair b. equal c. honest d. just e. unequal
68. Our teacher is very supportive. The word "supportive" has the same meaning as
 a. encouraging b. indifferent c. helpful d. discouraging e. uncaring
69. She has great potential in sports. The word "potential" has the same meaning as
 a. weakness b. ability c. impossibility d. capacity e. inability
70. She felt valued by her team for her hard work. The antonym of the word "valued" is
 a. ignored b. appreciated c. treasured d. respected e. neglected
71. The designer showed a lot of creativity in his project. The synonym of the word "creativity" is
 a. routine b. boredom c. talent d. imitation e. innovation
72. Applying for internships gives students a great opportunity. The word "opportunity" has the same meaning as
 a. chance b. risk c. obstacle d. possibility e. problem
73. He tried but failed to complete the project. The opposite of the word "failed" is
 a. achieve b. succeed c. give up d. lose e. miss
74. Winning the championship was a great achievement. The synonym of the word "achievement" is
 a. defeat b. victory c. success d. loss e. failure
75. The flowers in the vase are artificial. The antonym of the word "artificial" is
 a. virtual b. man-made c. fake d. genuine e. natural

المضارع التام
Present Perfectالإثبات
Affirmation

الفاعل + have / has + P.P.

- ❖ They **have watched** TV. ❖ Jana **has cooked** dinner.

النفي
Negative

الفاعل + haven't / hasn't + P.P.

- ❖ They **haven't watched** TV. ❖ Jana **hasn't cooked** dinner.

السؤال
Question

Have / Has + الفاعل + P.P... ?

- ❖ **Has** Jana **cooked** dinner?
 ✓ Yes, she **has**. ✗ No, she **hasn't**.

المجهول
Passive

مفعول + have / has + been + P.P.

- ❖ TV **has been watched** by them.
 ❖ Dinner **has been cooked**.

Key
Words

الكلمات الدالة

just	توًّا	▶ He has just read the novel.
already	بالفعل	▶ I have already visited Luxor.
ever	سبق أن	▶ Has Jana ever travelled abroad?
never	أبداً	▶ Seif has never eaten pizza.
yet	حتى الآن / ليس بعد (نفي أو سؤال)	▶ I haven't finished my study yet .
lately	مؤخراً	▶ They haven't studied English lately .
recently	حديثاً / مؤخراً	▶ Jana has finished her homework recently .
so far	حتى الآن	▶ She has cooked the meal so far .
up till now		▶ They have lived here up till now .
since	منذ	▶ He has travelled since 2010.
for	لمدة	▶ She has studied for five hours.
How long	كم المدة	▶ How long have you worked there?
still	ما زال	▶ She still hasn't said sorry to me.
... before.	من قبل	▶ I haven't seen her before .
This year / month / week ...		▶ She has worked hard this year .
Today / Tonight...		▶ He has done his homework today .
over the years...		▶ Over the years , we have studied English.
In recent years...		▶ In recent years , they have made money.
In the last years...		▶ In the last years , I have gained much weight.
It is the first / second		▶ It is the first time I have ever seen this film.

١ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال أثره أو نتيجته موجودة.

- ★ Mai **has had** an accident. She **is still** in hospital.

٢ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن انتهاء حدث في وقت قريب غالباً مع (just - recently - lately).

- ★ Jana **has just finished** her homework.
- ★ I **have studied** French **recently**.
- ★ She **has played** the piano **lately**.

٣ يستخدم المضارع التام للتأكيد على حدوث الفعل غالباً مع (already) و يأتي بين جزئي الفعل أو نهاية الجملة أو نهاية السؤال.

- ★ I **have finished** my breakfast **already**.
- ★ I've **already** booked my flight home.

٤ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث لم يتم أو لم يكتمل حتى الآن غالباً مع (yet) وتأتي آخر الجملة المنفية أو السؤال.

- ★ Toka **hasn't registered** for class **yet**.
- ★ **Has** she **emailed** you **yet**?

٥ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن المرور بتجربة لأول مرة غالباً مع (before - the first time)

- ★ She **has never visited** Europe **before**.
- ★ This is **the first time** I **have tasted** sushi.

٦ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب غالباً مع (ever - never).

- ★ **Have** you **ever tried** to write your name and address with your left hand?
- ★ She's **never said** sorry for what she did.

٧ يستخدم المضارع التام مع الترتيب والتفضيل غالباً مع (ever).

- ★ It is **the first time** I have **ever** seen Ali.
- ★ He is **the greatest** person I have **ever** met.

٨ لاحظ مكان ever: تستخدم في حالة (النفي / السؤال / التفضيل / الترتيب):

- ★ Have you **ever** visited Paris?
- ★ No one has **ever** spoken to me like that before.

٩ يستخدم المضارع التام مع صيغ المساواة والمقارنة غالباً مع (never).

- ★ I have **never** been **as happy as** I am today.
- ★ She has **never** felt **happier than** she does now.
- ★ He has **never** been **more excited** about a project **than** he is about this one.
- ★ She's **such a talented artist that** I have **ever** met.

١٠ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم القيام به وقابل للتغيير مع (up till now - so far) ويأتوا في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها.

- ★ I **have read** five chapters **up till now**.
- ★ **So far**, I think he's **done** a great job.

١١ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن آخر حدوث لموقف معين غالباً مع (since)

- ★ Al Daifi **hasn't visited** Luxor **since** 2020.
= Al Daifi **last visited** Luxor **in** 2020.
- ★ I **haven't eaten** pizza since last month.
= I **last ate** pizza last month.

١٦ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في توقيت معين أو المدة التي استغرقها غالباً مع (for - since).

مضارع تام
have / has + P.P

تستخدم مع:
بداية الحدث

since

2017 - 2010...

October - May...

Sunday - Friday...

marriage - childhood - graduation...

2 o'clock - 7 o'clock...

last - فترة زمنية - the last

then / when

مضارع تام
have / has + P.P

تستخدم مع:
المدة التي يستغرقها الحدث

for

a year - two years...

a month - three months..

a week - six weeks...

a long (short) time...

a day - four days...

an hour - two hours...

the last - فترة زمنية

ages...

★ Mr Ahmed has lived here **for** ten years.

★ She has studied French **since** last year.

★ She has been ill **since** the last meeting.

★ She has studied French **since** 2017.

٢١ يمكن استخدام since كأداة ربط:

have / has + P.P

مضارع تام

It is (has been) + time

هذا التركيب

Since

V + ed

or

غير منتظم

V + ing

ماضي بسيط

بدون فاعل

★ It is a year **since** I met Adham.

★ She **has studied** English **since** she **started** her school.

٢٢ يمكن استخدام since كأداة ربط بمعنى because = as:

★ **Since** the deadline has been extended, we have more time to complete the project.

٢٣ يمكن استخدام since مع when للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث واستخدام for مع how long للسؤال عن المدة.

★ **Since when** has he been working here?

★ **For how long** has the project been in progress?

٢٤ يستخدم المضارع التام مع بعض التعبيرات مثل: (In recent + time) (this + time) (In the last + time) (over + time)

★ **Over the years**, we have studied English.

★ **In the last years**, I have gained much weight.



لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي البسيط والمضارع التام

المضارع التام (Present Perfect)

حدث في أي وقت غير محدد في الماضي.
يعبر عن الأفعال التي لها علاقة بالحاضر.
يركز على نتيجة الحدث.

الماضي البسيط (Past Simple)

حدث في وقت محدد في الماضي.
يعبر عن أفعال انتهت بالفعل.
يركز على الحدث نفسه.

already / yet

- نستخدم **already** في نهاية السؤال إذا كان المعنى "دهشة" أو الرد على السؤال ايجابي
- ★ Have you done your homework **already**? - That's too fast. (yet x)
- نستخدم **yet** في نهاية السؤال إذا كان الرد على السؤال سلبي
- ★ Have you done your homework **yet**? - You are too slow. (already x)



have gone to / have been to / have been in

- ★ I **have been to** Alex. = I visited Alex and came back. ذهبت و عدت
- ★ I **have gone to** Alex. = I visited Alex and stayed there. ذهبت وما زلت هناك لم ارجع
- ★ I **have been in** Alex for 10 years. متواجد و أعيش في الإسكندرية منذ ١٠ سنوات

How long / How long ago

- ★ (How long - **How long ago**) did you study English? ماضى بسيط
- ★ (**How long** - How long ago) have you been studying English? مضارع تام مستمر

١٢ يستخدم المضارع التام (أو المضارع البسيط) مع الروابط الزمنية:

مصدر **will** + مضارع بسيط أو تام **after / before / when / as soon as**

- ★ I'll go to bed after I **do** (have done) my homework.
- ★ As soon as she **arrives** (has arrived) in London, she will call me.

ماضي تام **didn't** + until **Or** **won't** + until مضارع بسيط أو تام

- ★ He **won't** come until I **phone** (have phoned) him.
- ★ He **didn't** come until I **had phoned** him.

المضارع التام المستمر
Present Perfect Continuous

الإثبات

Affirmation

الفاعل + **have / has been + (v + ing)**

Uses الاستخدامات

- نستخدم للتركيز على الفعل و ليس نتيجة الفعل.
- ★ I **have been studying** English all day.
- يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومستمر في الحاضر.
- ★ I feel bored as I **have been waiting** for him for more than six hours.
- يعبر عن طول الفترة التي استغرقها الحدث ويستخدم مع معظم كلمات المضارع التام بالإضافة إلى:
- all (morning/day/night/week/month/year...)- for... now/for... not yet/How long...**
- ★ I **have been working** hard **all day**. ★ He **has been playing** for 3 hours **now**.
- ★ How long **have you been learning** English? - For 10 years.
- لاحظ: استخدام المضارع التام فقط وعدم استخدام المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:
- الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية):
 - إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل (two - three - many - few - several - a lot of):
 - أفعال الحالة وهي أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة:
- ★ I **have stopped** writing stories for 3 years now. (have been stopping x)
- ★ Ahmed **has finished** typing **three** reports. (has been finishing x)
- ★ We are good friends. We **have known** each other for 10 years. (have been knowing x)



Exercise 20 Language Level 1

1. She her room 4 times, but it still looks unpleasant. SB
 a. have painted b. has painted c. paints d. painting
2. He started working yet. SB
 a. has b. hasn't c. didn't d. wasn't
3. Samir new routines that make his life healthier. SB
 a. builds b. had built c. has built d. building
4. Hoda the washing up yet. SB
 a. doesn't do b. hadn't done c. didn't do d. hasn't done
5. Samir the gym last year. SB
 a. joined b. had joined c. have joined d. has joined
6. Mr. Badawy to Luxor. He is in Cairo now. SB
 a. have gone b. has visited c. has been d. has gone
7. When start living in the country? SB
 a. were you b. did you c. have you d. are you
8. His old habits his life badly. He seems like another person now. SB
 a. have affected b. has affected c. affect d. affecting
9. I English for ten years. SB
 a. studied b. 's studied c. 've studying d. 've studied
10. We returned home from a six-day holiday. SB
 a. just have b. 've just c. never have d. have recent
11. I've visited Giza Zoo. SB
 a. since b. yet c. ever d. never
12. your weekend? Yes, I have visited many places. SB
 a. Did you enjoy b. Have you enjoyed c. Are you enjoyed d. Did you enjoyed
13. Have you ever been to Edfu? - No, I've there. SB
 a. never been b. already been c. just been d. ever been
14. Since this morning, I three cups of coffee. جھینڈہ ۲۰۲۴
 a. drink b. drank c. have been drinking d. have drunk
15. Where is Farida? She to the supermarket. سوفاج اخمیم ۲۰۲۴
 a. has been b. was c. had d. has gone
16. Father: Why are your clothes dirty? Son: I into a pond of water. بسیون ۲۰۲۴
 a. have fallen b. fell c. was falling d. fall
17. We met our friend lately. He is still away. جنوب الجیزہ ۲۰۲۴
 a. didn't b. haven't c. had d. hadn't
18. Dad to Paris. Let's see the presents he bought for us. اسیوط منازل ۲۰۲۴
 a. has been b. has gone c. is going d. is being
19. Omar has learnt French since he Paris. القوصیہ ۲۰۲۴
 a. has been visited b. has visited c. is visiting d. visited
20. I can't go to the party because my leg نقادہ منازل ۲۰۲۴
 a. was broken b. broke c. has broken d. was breaking
21. I haven't heard from my friend since he abroad a year ago. قطر ۲۰۲۴
 a. went b. had gone c. has gone d. goes
22. This is the most interesting programme I قنا ۲۰۲۴
 a. have never seen b. seen c. ever have seen d. have ever seen

23. I haven't gone to the zoo since I a child. العمرانية منازل ٢٠٢٤
 a. was b. went c. have d. have been
24. Finally, my mother how to use the internet. Now she can send e-mails. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning
25. It's the first time I have visited this museum. What a wonderful place to visit! £M
 a. just b. yet c. ever d. never
26. I haven't seen my uncle the last three weeks. البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣ القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
 a. yet b. since c. ago d. for
27. Nadeen really loves that book. She it three times. بسيون ٢٠٢٣
 a. is reading b. has read c. had read d. was reading
28. Scientists ways to isolate genes in the last few years. فاقوس ٢٠٢٣
 a. develops b. have developed c. will develop d. were developing
29. Hoda in Luxor for eight years. She still lives there. شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٣
 a. has lived b. was living c. lived d. had lived
30. I such a tricky person all my life long.
 a. never have seen b. have never seen c. never seen d. not seen
31. Have you finished your homework ? -You are too slow.
 a. ever b. yet c. just d. already
32. Oh, I the bus. How can I go to the university now?
 a. had missed b. has missed c. missed d. have missed
33. I won't help my young brother till I my work. اسيوط ابوتيج ٢٠٢٤
 a. have finished b. finished c. finishes d. had finished
34. After he , I'll give him a present. الخانكة ٢٠٢٤
 a. is coming b. come c. has come d. came
35. Once he home, he will finish his homework.
 a. has reached b. had reached c. reach d. reached



Exercise 04 Language Level 2

36. She English since she was five years old. SB R 3
 a. is learning b. had learned c. has been learning d. learns
37. I have worked in this factory my graduation party. المنيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. for b. since c. while d. when
38. She since 8:00 a.m. and she still hasn't finished her work. SB R 3
 a. had been writing b. has been writing c. wrote d. writes
39. I have been to Italy before. I haven't visited any European countries up till now. £M
 a. never b. ever c. already d. recently
40. I haven't travelled out of my home town my birth. بني مزار ٢٠٢٤ شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٣
 a. before b. since c. for d. ever
41. Nobody has said that to me before. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
 a. ever b. never c. always d. yet
42. the death of her father, I have never seen her smiling. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤ المنيا ٢٠٢٣
 a. So far b. For c. Since d. When
43. I haven't seen my friends in the village a long time. شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. for b. since c. ago d. when
44. I can't believe it! Have you done the exercise ? طلاب الخارج ٢٠٢٤ القليوبية ٢٠٢٤ الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
 a. yet b. ever c. already d. since

45. It's four years he played tennis. بنها ٢٠٢٤
 a. since b. when c. for d. while
46. Sadly, my uncle has been ill he was a young man. ملهطا ٢٠٢٤ وسط اسكندرية ٢٠٢٤ الملحة ٢٠٢٤ الحوامدية ٢٠٢٤
 a. for b. when c. ago d. since
47. I haven't seen Ali the last time we met in Cairo. جرجا ٢٠٢٣ بنها ٢٠٢٣ وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. since b. for c. ago d. which
48. I started my profession; I have met a lot of excellent students. الاقصر اسنا ٢٠٢٤ دمياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. Since b. On c. After d. Before
49. My brother has been to the USA for two years. This means that he سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. is in the USA now b. will be back soon
 c. went and came back d. won't go there again
50. The floor is very clean. It has already well. أسوط أبنوب ٢٠٢٤
 a. been swept b. been sweeping c. being swept d. being sweeping
51. His new novel yet. دشنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. has published b. hasn't published
 c. hasn't been published d. has been published
52. A number of ever-green trees in the new farm over the last few decades. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
 a. were planted b. was planted c. has been planted d. have been planted
53. He is very hungry since he eaten nothing for two days. جرجا ٢٠٢٤
 a. hasn't b. was c. didn't d. has
54. For actions that happened in the past and its effect is clear in present, the is used. بها ٢٠٢٣
 a. simple present b. perfect present c. continuous present d. simple future
55. What is still a secret; you needn't worry. برج العرب ٢٠٢٣
 a. has been said b. has said c. have you said d. had been said
56. The injured woman to the public hospital. بنها ٢٠٢٣
 a. takes b. took c. has taken d. has been taken
57. Now, Huda lives in extreme poverty because all the money she had, الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a. been lost b. was lost c. has been lost d. is being lost
58. I am over the moon; I a medal for writing poetry. لم
 a. was winning b. won c. had won d. have won
59. typed yet? لم
 a. Had the report been b. Has the report been
 c. Has the report d. Had the report
60. It's two years since he this job. القوسية ٢٠٢٣
 a. got b. has got c. gets d. to get
61. The museum by thousands of people this year.
 b. has been visited b. has visited c. visited d. visit
62. "Why to that flat late at night?" The magistrate asked the criminal.
 a. have you gone b. have you been c. have you visited d. has you visited
63. Don't worry, once I of the exam result, I will tell you.
 a. have informed b. was informed
 c. have been informed d. am informing
64. I my best friend since kindergarten.
 a. have been knowing b. had known c. have known d. knew

65. The ground is wet because it all day.

- a. was raining b. had been raining c. have been raining d. has been raining

66. I for that company for a year and I enjoy it so much.

- a. worked b. has worked c. have been worked d. have been working



Exercise 04

Language Level 3

67. Hatim a taxi driver for years; he hasn't changed his career.

- a. had been b. is c. was d. has been

EM

68. She left an hour ago. She hasn't returned

- a. then b. since then c. already d. just

69. She has lived in this village the age of seven.

- a. for b. yet c. never d. since

70. Ali and his family have travelled since

- a. his marriage b. he marries c. he gets married d. married

71. My uncle a lung disease since he started to smoke.

- a. have b. had had c. has had d. has been

EM

72. No information to the new staff yet.

- a. has given b. has been given c. hasn't given d. hasn't been given

73. No one spoken to me like that before.

- a. have never b. has never c. has ever d. have ever

74. He has worked as a teacher since school.

- a. finishing b. finished c. has finished d. had finished

- c. the problem had already been solved d. we had already solved the problem

75. It's the first time she's ever visited Hyde Park. This means that

- a. she hasn't visited Hyde Park yet
b. she has already visited Hyde Park many times
c. she hasn't visited Hyde Park before d. she will never visit Hyde Park again

EM

76. He hasn't played tennis since he was in the club last week. This means that

- a. he played tennis in the club a week ago
b. he didn't play tennis last week c. he hasn't played tennis before
d. he is still playing tennis in the club

2) Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Sama started learning English in 2009.

(for) SB

2. Mo Salah has played for Liverpool since 2017.

(in 2017) SB

3. He practiced swimming daily when he was young.

(since) SB

4. Although he is 55, he didn't see a lion in his real life.

(has never) SB

5. Sami went to Benha. He came back home 5 minutes ago.

(has been) SB

6. We visited the Pyramids in 2018.

(since)

7. It is a long time since I last saw my best friend.

(for)

8. It's two weeks since I met my teacher.

(for)

9. He has played the guitar since 2010.

(for)

10. My uncle bought this car in 2021.

(has)

11. She started learning Spanish two years ago, and she is still learning it.

(been)

12. This is the first time I have ridden a horse.

(never)

13. The last time I saw Ali was three weeks ago.

(for)

14. He hasn't met her for a year.

(It is ...)

Building a Better Future

- 3 New Paths, Old Habits
4 Careers That Will Shape Tomorrow
5 Argumentative Essay



Key Vocabulary

balanced life ⁽ⁿ⁾	حياة متوازنة	challenges ⁽ⁿ⁾	تحديات	progress ⁽ⁿ⁾	تقدم / تطور
daily routine ⁽ⁿ⁾	روتين يومي	specialist ⁽ⁿ⁾	متخصص	job market ⁽ⁿ⁾	سوق العمل
discipline ^(n/v)	انضباط / نظام / تأديب	problem-solving ⁽ⁿ⁾	حل المشكلات	argumentative ^(adj)	جدلي
addiction ⁽ⁿ⁾	إدمان	sustainability ⁽ⁿ⁾	الإستدامة	mindfulness ⁽ⁿ⁾	اليقظة الذهنية
flexibility ⁽ⁿ⁾	مرونة	digital wellness ⁽ⁿ⁾	الصحة الرقمية	space industry ⁽ⁿ⁾	صناعة الفضاء
consultant ⁽ⁿ⁾	مستشار	fast-changing ^(adj)	سريع التغير	professional ^(n/adj)	محترف / مهني

Main Vocabulary

adaptability ⁽ⁿ⁾	القدرة على التكيف	eco-friendly ^(adj)	صديق للبيئة / ييني	meaningful ^(adj)	ذو معنى / هادف
lifestyle ⁽ⁿ⁾	إسلوب حياة	method ⁽ⁿ⁾	طريقة / أسلوب	struggle ^(n/v)	يكافح / كفاح
nonstop ^(adj/adv)	مستمر / بدون توقف	job market ⁽ⁿ⁾	سوق العمل	schedule ^(n/v)	جدول / يجدول
aerospace ⁽ⁿ⁾	صناعة الطيران والفضاء	job field ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجال العمل	ability ⁽ⁿ⁾	قدرة / مهارة
client ⁽ⁿ⁾	عميل	connected ^(adj)	متصل / مرتبط	screen time	وقت استخدام الشاشات
planner ⁽ⁿ⁾	مخطط / منسق	step ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطوة	convince ^(v)	يقنع
strengthen ^(v)	يقوي	space tourism ⁽ⁿ⁾	السياحة الفضائية	updated ^(adj)	محدث
quit ^(v)	يترك / يتوقف عن	private ^(adj)	خاص	path ⁽ⁿ⁾	ممر / طريق
appear ^(v)	يظهر	invest ^(v)	يستثمر	habits ⁽ⁿ⁾	عادات
art magazine ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجلة فنية	available ^(adj)	متاح	green solution	حل صديق للبيئة
technical skills ⁽ⁿ⁾	المهارات التقنية	list ^(n/v)	قائمة / يسجل / يضع في قائمة	balance ^(n/v)	توازن / يوازن
climate change ⁽ⁿ⁾	تغير المناخ	regularly ^(adv)	بانتظام / بشكل دوري	balanced ^(adj)	متوازن / معتدل
stressed ^(adj)	متوتر / مضغوط نفسياً	reduce ^(v)	يقلل / يخفّض	realise ^(v)	يدرّك / يكتشف
require ^(v)	يتطلب / يحتاج إلى	method ⁽ⁿ⁾	طريقة / أسلوب / منهج	connected world	عالم مترابط
gym ⁽ⁿ⁾	صالة رياضية	relax ^(v)	يسترخي	coach ⁽ⁿ⁾	مدرب

Collocations

join the gym	ينضم إلى صالة ألعاب رياضية	get married	يتزوج
exercise regularly	يمارس الرياضة بانتظام	gain knowledge/ skills	يكتسب معرفة/ مهارات
make changes	يجري تغييرات	practise mindfulness	يمارس اليقظة الذهنية
face addiction	يواجه الإدمان	create chances / jobs	يخلق فرصاً / وظائف
reduce screen time	يقلل وقت استخدام الشاشات	create a modern system	يخلق نظام حديث
build habits/ skills	يبنى عادات/ مهارات	stay updated	يواكب التطورات / يبقى على اطلاع
keep a balance	يحافظ على التوازن	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات

Expressions & Prepositions

green technology	تكنولوجيا صديقة للبيئة	look unpleasant	يبدو غير مريح / غير مقبول
a six-day holiday	عطلة ستة أيام	make his life healthier	يجعل حياته أكثر صحة
do the washing up	يفسل أطباق	take care of	يعتني به / يهتم به / يتولى رعاية
in high demand	مطلوب بشدة	reduce their effect on	يقلل تأثيرهم على
spend a lot of money on	ينفق كثير من المال على	suggest green solutions	يقترح حلول صديقة للبيئة
shape tomorrow	يشكل المستقبل	keep a balance between...	يحافظ على توازن بين
Bachelor's Degree in	درجة بكالوريوس في	struggle with	يعاني من / يواجه صعوبة في
available upon request	متاح عند الطلب	deal with	يتعامل مع
get ready for	يستعد لـ		

Definitions

addiction	الإدمان	▶ when someone cannot stop using something
digital wellness	الصحة الرقمية	▶ staying healthy and balanced when using technology
fast-changing	سريع التغير	▶ happening quickly and continuously
flexibility	المرونة	▶ the ability to change easily in new situations
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	▶ the ability to deal with and fix difficult situations
specialists	متخصصون / خبراء	▶ experts who work in a specific field
sustainability	الاستدامة	▶ protecting the environment and using resources responsibly

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
private	خاص / شخصي / سري	personal, secret, exclusive	public, common, official
mindfulness	وعي ذهني / يقظة ذهنية	awareness, attention, presence	distraction, inattentiveness, carelessness
fast-changing	سريع التغير	rapidly changing, evolving, dynamic	stable, slow-changing, unchanging
discipline	انضباط	self-control, order	chaos, disorder, negligence
progress	تقدم	advancement, development, improvement	decline, setback, regression
wellness	عافية / صحة عامة	health, fitness, well-being	illness, unhealthiness, disease
flexibility	مرونة	adaptability, suppleness, resilience	rigidity, inflexibility, stiffness
career	مسار مهني / مهنة	profession, occupation, vocation	
reduce	يقلل / يخفض	decrease, lessen, lower	increase, raise, expand

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
change	يغير	change	تغيير	changing	متغير
create	يخلق / ينشئ	creation	إنشاء	creative	إبداعي
sustain	يحافظ على	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
connect	يربط	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
addict	يُدمِن	addiction	إدمان	addictive	إدماني
balance	يوازن	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
plan	يخطط	planner / plan	مخطط / خطة	planned	مخطط



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

quit	يترك / يتوقف عن	quite	جداً / إلى حد ما / تماماً
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير / نتيجة
discipline	إنضباط	system	نظام / منظومة تشغيل / طريقة تنظيمية
take care of	يعتني به / يراعي / يهتم به	care for	يهتم به / يعتني به
balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
demand	طلب	supply	معروض
personal	شخصي	private	خاص
reduce	يقلل	produce	ينتج
spend money on	ينفق المال على شيء	spend time with	يقضي وقتاً مع شخص
career	مسيرة مهنية	position	منصب / رتبة
professional	مجترب / مهني	amateur	هاو / غير مجترب
technical skills	مهارات تقنية	soft skills	مهارات شخصية

technology, technical & technician

technology (n)	تكنولوجيا / تقنية	Companies use smart technology in their work.
technical (adj)	تقني / فني	This job needs strong technical skills.
technician (n)	شخص فني / تقني	The technician fixed the computer system.

create, creative, creation & creator

create (v)	يخلق / ينشئ / يصمم	These workers create modern systems.
creative (adj)	إبداعي / مبتكر	Technology jobs need creative thinking.
creation (n)	إنشاء / ابتكار / عمل	The creation of new systems helps companies grow.
creator (n)	منشئ / مبتكر	The software creator designed a smart program.



"Careers That Will Shape Tomorrow"

Is adaptability important for tomorrow's job market?

The **job market** ⁽¹⁾ is always changing, and many future **careers** ⁽²⁾ are already starting to appear. Technology and new needs in society are creating exciting chances for people who are ready to change and learn. Artificial Intelligence **Specialists** ⁽³⁾ are in **high demand** because companies want to use smart technology in their work. These workers create modern systems and train computer programs. This job needs strong technical skills and good **problem-solving** ⁽⁴⁾ abilities.



- (١) سوق عمل
- (٢) مهنة
- (٣) متخصص
- (٤) حل مشكلات
- (٥) مستشار استدامة
- (٦) صحة رقمية
- (٧) إيمان
- (٨) طيران فضائي
- (٩) مخطط
- (١٠) مرونة
- (١١) سريع التغير

Sustainability Consultants ⁽⁵⁾ help companies **reduce their effect** on the environment. As climate change becomes a bigger problem, businesses are **spending** a lot of **money on** green technology and eco-friendly methods. These consultants check how companies affect the environment, suggest green solutions, and help them reach their sustainability goals.

Digital Wellness ⁽⁶⁾ Coaches are part of a completely new job field. As people face technology **addiction** ⁽⁷⁾ and stress from too much screen time, these specialists help clients build healthy habits with technology. They give personal **plans for** reducing screen time and keeping a **balance between** work and life in our connected world.

Space Industry Professionals are **getting ready for** the next big step. From **aerospace** ⁽⁸⁾ engineers to **space tourism planners** ⁽⁹⁾, this industry is growing very fast. Private companies are making space travel **easier for** more people, creating many new jobs.

The **key to success** in the future job market is **flexibility** ⁽¹⁰⁾. People who continue learning and **stay updated** with new technology will succeed in this **fast-changing** ⁽¹¹⁾ world.



Listening



Samir has lived most of his life following the same routine. For many years, he worked late, slept very little, and ate whatever he found quickly. He had **spent** so much time **working** that he forgot how to **take care of** himself. Last year, he **realised** that his old habits had affected his health badly. He often felt tired, and he became **stressed** very easily.

Since then, Samir has changed many things in his life. He has started waking up early, and he has followed a healthier **schedule**. He joined a local gym, and he has exercised **regularly** for months. He also has learned to take short breaks during the day **instead of** working nonstop.

Most importantly, Samir has discovered that **balance** is the key to **progress**. He has spent more time with his family, and he has practiced **mindfulness** every evening. His life has become calmer, and he has built new habits that support both his body and mind. Samir now believes that even small changes can **lead to** a more **balanced** and meaningful life.





Exercise Ph

Key Vocabulary

1. Artificial Intelligence are needed to design smart systems. SB
 a. farmers b. specialists c. painters d. drivers
2. Businesses invest in green technology to improve their SB
 a. decoration b. entertainment c. dignity d. sustainability
3. Some people struggle with technology and screen time. SB
 a. interest b. addiction c. talent d. experience
4. The modern job market is and full of new careers. SB
 a. quiet b. traditional c. fast-changing d. comfortable
5. coaches help people build healthy habits with technology. SB
 a. Sports b. Language c. Career d. Digital wellness
6. A successful worker needs strong skills to deal with challenges. SB
 a. reading b. listening c. problem-solving d. writing
7. He always behaves in a way at work so all clients love him so much.
 a. childish b. careless c. noisy d. professional
8. This job needs in working hours. You may be asked to work at any time.
 a. rigidity b. strength c. flexibility d. pressure
9. He tries to live a life between work and rest.
 a. balanced b. chaos c. pressure d. conflict
10. Brushing your teeth every morning must be part of your
 a. celebration b. routine c. surprise d. accident
11. She has made great in learning English.
 a. delay b. mistake c. damage d. progress
12. The company hired a/an to improve its business plan.
 a. engineer b. consultant c. technician d. driver
13. Learning a new language has many You must be able to face them.
 a. chances b. roles c. habits d. challenges
14. Graduates must understand the before applying for jobs.
 a. shop b. prize c. job market d. interview
15. Daily breathing exercises improve and focus.
 a. mindfulness b. laziness c. madness d. stress
16. The lawyer listened carefully to his to be able to prove his innocence.
 a. judge b. addiction c. client d. enemy
17. The word means happening quickly and continuously.
 a. problem-solving b. fast-changing c. addiction d. specialist
18. Staying healthy and balanced when using technology is called
 a. specialist b. addiction c. problem-solving d. digital wellness
19. The coach taught the players the importance of in training.
 a. laziness b. delay c. chaos d. discipline
20. In a fast-changing world, is necessary to adapt to new situations.
 a. flexibility b. tradition c. delay d. empathy
21. A/An attitude is important in the workplace.
 a. amateur b. professional c. junior d. nervous
22. Programming is an important skill for modern jobs.
 a. junior b. social c. technical d. virtual

23. A/An employee usually has little experience at work.

- a. senior b. manager c. expert d. junior

24. A healthy life depends on keeping a between work and rest.

- a. role b. balance c. habit d. choice



Exercise Ph

Main Vocabulary

25. Eating healthily, exercising regularly, and sleeping well are part of a healthy

- a. furniture b. lifestyle c. weather d. vehicle

26. Regular practice and studying every day will your skills in math.

- a. weaken b. ignore c. break d. strengthen

27. To work in robotics, students need good in programming and electronics.

- a. technical skills b. hobbies c. feelings d. fashion

28. Using solar panels and wind turbines is an example of that helps protect the environment.

- a. green technology b. fast food c. heavy industry d. sports equipment

29. She uses a to organize her daily tasks.

- a. dairy b. planner c. path d. dictionary

30. Recycling is a/an solution that reduces waste and pollution.

- a. green b. temporary c. trivial d. risky

31. Education can be the best to a successful career.

- a. risk b. excuse c. problem d. path

32. It is important to keep your knowledge in a fast-changing world.

- a. updated b. hidden c. simple d. ancient

33. Parents try to limit children's to protect their health.

- a. homework b. screen time c. hobbies d. meals

34. The job needs people with the to solve problems quickly.

- a. rule b. ability c. choice d. opinion

35. She planned her study carefully before the exams started.

- a. break b. result c. opinion d. schedule

36. Helping others can be a/an experience that changes how you see life.

- a. boring b. careless c. meaningful d. weak

37. The children were so excited that they played in the park all afternoon.

- a. occasional b. nonstop c. slow d. quiet

38. Many people prefer to use products to help protect the environment.

- a. expensive b. heavy c. dangerous d. eco-friendly

39. The football gave the team some important tips before the match.

- a. driver b. coach c. waiter d. pilot

40. It is smart to your money in a good project to earn profits in the future.

- a. waste b. invest c. forget d. spend

41. The new video game will be in stores next week.

- a. closed b. missing c. available d. broken

42. Before going shopping, I always make a of the items I need.

- a. map b. pillow c. list d. pen

43. Many companies are using to make their machines smarter and faster.

- a. paper books b. Artificial Intelligence
c. manual labor d. traditional tools



Exercise 20

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

44. He decided to the gym to improve his health.
 a. leave b. ignore c. join d. cancel
45. Many teenagers need to addiction to phones and games.
 a. raise b. face c. increase d. hide
46. Doctors advise students to screen time to protect their eyes.
 a. increase b. enjoy c. reduce d. share
47. If you want a better life, you must changes in your daily routine.
 a. refuse b. make c. delay d. lose
48. To relax your mind, you should mindfulness every day.
 a. practise b. forget c. waste d. disturb
49. After finishing university, he plans to married next year.
 a. make b. do c. get d. give
50. To succeed in your career, you must updated with new skills.
 a. stop b. fall c. move d. stay
51. We are planning a holiday next month.
 a. seven-day's b. days-seven c. seven-day d. seven-days
52. When guests leave, it's your turn to the washing up.
 a. do b. bring c. make d. carry
53. AI skills are high demand in the job market today.
 a. on b. at c. in d. for
54. He spends a lot of money clothes and gadgets.
 a. in b. on c. at d. with
55. Teachers must deal students' problems wisely.
 a. to b. for c. about d. with
56. When using AI, all information needed is available request.
 a. in b. by c. upon d. with
57. We should reduce the effect of pollution the environment.
 a. in b. on c. at d. for
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
58. This is my private room. The synonym of the word "private" is
 a. public b. exclusive c. common d. personal e. official
59. Mindfulness helps you feel calm. The antonym of the word "mindfulness" is
 a. presence b. attention c. awareness d. carelessness e. distraction
60. Technology is fast-changing today. The synonym of the word "fast-changing" is
 a. unchanging b. dynamic c. evolving d. slow-changing e. stable
61. Discipline helps students succeed. The antonym of the word "discipline" is
 a. chaos b. training c. order d. self-control e. disorder
62. She makes progress in English. The synonym of the word "progress" is
 a. regression b. improvement c. advancement d. setback e. decline
63. Exercise improves wellness. The antonym of the word "wellness" is
 a. well-being b. fitness c. health d. unhealthiness e. illness
64. This job needs flexibility. The synonym of the word "flexibility" is
 a. rigidity b. resilience c. adaptability d. inflexibility e. stiffness
65. We should reduce screen time. The antonym of the word "reduce" is
 a. raise b. increase c. lower d. lessen e. decrease
66. She wants a career in medicine. The synonym of the word "career" is
 a. hobby b. inactivity c. unemployment d. profession e. occupation

المقال الجدلي

Argumentative Essay



Definition of Argumentative Essay

- ★ It gives your opinion. يعطى رأيك.
- ★ It supports it with reasons, evidence and examples. يدعمه بالأسباب و الأدلة والأمثلة.
- ★ It presents both sides of an issue and supports one with logic and evidence. يعرض كلا الجانبين من القضية ويدعم أحدهما بالمنطق والأدلة.
- ★ It depends on facts, statistics, data, and research with a formal and objective tone. يعتمد على الحقائق والإحصائيات والبيانات والبحث بنبرة رسمية وموضوعية.
- ★ It tries to convince the reader with your opinion. يحاول اقناع القارئ بوجهة نظرك.



Structure of Argumentative Essay

Section القسم	Purpose الغرض	Example Phrases أمثلة على العبارات
Introduction المقدمة	▶ It presents the topic. تقدم الموضوع. ▶ It states your opinion clearly. تعبّر عن رأيك بوضوح.	Giving an Opinion ▶ I believe that... ▶ In my opinion... ▶ I think it is clear that
Body Paragraph(s) متن الموضوع	▶ It gives reasons for your opinion with examples, facts or evidence. يعطى أسبابا لرأيك مع أمثلة أو حقائق أو أدلة. ▶ It adds examples or explanations. يضيف الأمثلة والشرح.	Giving Reasons ▶ Firstly,... ▶ Another reason is... ▶ This is because ... Adding Examples ▶ For example,... ▶ For instance,...
Conclusion الخاتمة	▶ It restates your opinion. تعيد التعبير عن رأيك. ▶ It ends with a future hope or advice. ينتهي بأمل أو نصيحة مستقبلية. ▶ It summarizes main points. تلخص النقاط الرئيسية.	Concluding ▶ In conclusion,... ▶ To sum up,... ▶ That's why I believe... ▶ For these reasons, ...

What is Good for My Future Career?

Choosing the right career is very important for my future. In my opinion, continuing my education is the best choice for a successful career.

First of all, education helps me gain knowledge and skills. When I study hard, I learn how to think, solve problems, and work with others. These skills are important for any job. For example, many good jobs need people who can communicate well and make decisions. Another reason is that education gives better job opportunities. People with higher education usually find better jobs and earn more money. This helps them have a stable and comfortable life in the future.

In conclusion, I believe that focusing on education is good for my future career. If I work hard now, I will be able to achieve my dreams and become successful.


Exercise Ph
Writing

- An argumentative essay mainly gives the writer's
 a. story b. opinion c. report d. summary
- An argumentative essay tries to the reader.
 a. entertain b. confuse c. convince d. describe
- The phrase "I believe that ..." is used to express in an essay.
 a. opinion b. example c. contrast d. reason
- Supporting your opinion with reasons and examples is a main feature of a/an essay.
 a. argumentative b. personal c. descriptive d. narrative
- An argumentative essay does NOT depend on
 a. opinions b. reasons c. examples d. imagination
- "In my, choosing the right career is important".
 a. example b. opinion c. reason d. conclusion
- Which expression is used to give an opinion?
 a. For instance, b. Another reason is
 c. I think that d. In conclusion,
- Which expression fits a conclusion best?
 a. In conclusion, b. Another reason is
 c. For instance, d. First of all,
- Which expression is used to give a reason?
 a. For instance, b. In my opinion, c. Another reason is d. To sum up
- Reasons are usually written in the of the essay.
 a. introduction b. conclusion c. title d. body
- Which expression is used to add an example?
 a. I believe that b. Another reason is
 c. For instance d. In conclusion

12. Complete the sentence: "In conclusion, ..." is used to
- a. mention the opposing view b. give a new example
c. state the first reason d. summarize the opinion and main points
13. A good argumentative essay is usually clear, organized, and
- a. personal b. informal c. convincing d. confusing
14. In an argumentative essay, evidence can include
- a. facts, statistics, and expert opinions b. only personal opinions
c. random examples d. unrelated stories
15. The introduction presents the topic and states the writer's
- a. example b. opinion c. reason d. advice
16. The conclusion restates the opinion and ends with a
- a. future hope b. example c. joke d. story
17. An argumentative essay should
- a. present both sides of an issue and support one b. tell a personal story
c. be completely one-sided without evidence d. list daily activities
18. "To sum up" is used to the main idea.
- a. start b. explain c. repeat d. ignore
19. The conclusion should NOT include
- a. restating opinion b. future hope c. advice d. new reasons
20. Examples usually come after
- a. opinions b. titles c. reasons d. conclusions
21. Which type of essay presents both sides of an issue before taking a stand?
- a. descriptive b. argumentative c. persuasive d. narrative
22. Which phrase is used to give an example?
- a. I believe that... b. Firstly,... c. For instance,... d. In conclusion,...
23. What is the main purpose of the conclusion?
- a. Give a new example b. Summarize main points and restate opinion
c. Introduce the opposing view d. Present the first reason
24. Which phrase can be used to state your opinion?
- a. On the other hand... b. I think it is clear that...
c. Firstly... d. In conclusion...



A Vocabulary & Structure

1. A can deliver small packages quickly.
a. growth b. robot c. dignity d. drone
2. A can help do dangerous jobs in factories and hospitals.
a. dignity b. robot c. growth d. drone
3. Mona is in Cairo now. She to Alex.
a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
4. The company hired a business
a. addict b. sustainability c. consultant d. adaptability

B Translation

5. Try to draw a roadmap for your ambitions because a goal without a plan remains just a wish.
أ. حاول أن ترسم خارطة طريق لطموحاتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.
ب. حاول أن ترسم خريطة مرنة لطموحاتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.
ج. حاول أن تصمم خريطة مرنة لأمنياتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.
د. حاول أن ترسم خارطة مستقبلية لأمنياتك، لأن الهدف بلا خطة يبقى مجرد أمنية.

C Writing

Write an argumentative essay of about (150 words) about.

"Being your own boss is better than being just a clerk"



Exercise 10

Translation

1. Egypt is one of the countries that has several attractions for tourists. Besides the admirable monuments, Egypt has a splendid weather in winter. العيادة ٢٠٢٤
أ. تعد مصر من الدول التي لديها العديد من عوامل الجذب السياحي. فإلى جانب الآثار الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس رائع في الشتاء.
ب. تعد مصر من الدول التي لديها العديد من القيود للسياح. فإلى جانب الآثار الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس رائع في الشتاء.
ج. تعد مصر من الدول التي لديها العديد من المفاتيح للسياح. فإلى جانب الآثار الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس عجيب في الشتاء.
د. تعد مصر من الدول التي لديها العديد من عوامل الجذب للسياح. فإلى جانب اللحظات الرائعة، تتمتع مصر بطقس رائع في الشتاء.
2. Charities have an undeniable role in providing help and support for the poor and needy, so we should boost them both financially and with our efforts. بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤
أ. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً أساسياً في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
ب. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً لا ينكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
ج. تلعب المؤسسات الحكومية دوراً لا يذكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
د. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً لا ينكر في توفير المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
3. We need to pass more traffic laws so as to achieve faster flow of traffic and reduce car accidents as possible. النزهة ٢٠٢٤
أ. نحتاج لإصدار المزيد من قوانين المرور لتحقيق تدفق مروري أسرع وتقليل حوادث الطرق قدر المستطاع.
ب. نحتاج لتحديد المزيد من قوانين المرور لإنجاز تدفق مروري أسرع وتقليل حوادث الطرق قدر المستطاع.
ج. نحتاج لتنويع المزيد من قوانين المرور لتحقيق تدفق مروري أسرع وتخفيض حوادث الطرق قدر المستطاع.
د. نحتاج لإلغاء المزيد من قوانين المرور لإنجاز تدفق مروري أسرع وتقليل حوادث الطرق قدر المستطاع.



General Exercises on

Unit 9



A Vocabulary and Structure

1) Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- Good sleep helps wellness. The antonym of the word "wellness" is
a. unhealthiness b. fitness c. illness d. health e. well-being
- The flowers in the vase are artificial. The word "artificial" has the same meaning as
a. man-made b. fake c. genuine d. real e. natural

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Phone can affect students badly.
a. hobby b. habit c. addiction d. interest
- Recycling helps protect environmental
a. pollution b. damage c. waste d. sustainability
- Limiting screen time supports better
a. entertainment b. digital wellness c. internet speed d. online gaming
- A flying machine controlled remotely is called
a. artificial b. virtual c. drone d. adapt
- Rania feels of her achievements after finishing the project.
a. focus b. apply c. join d. proud
- Something made by humans, not natural, is called
a. empathy b. replace c. virtual d. artificial
- I this book three times, but I still enjoy reading it.
a. have read b. has read c. am reading d. reading
- She very tired after finishing the long project.
a. have been b. has been c. is being d. being
- Ali a new plan to manage his time better since last holiday.
a. makes b. made c. has made d. making
- They the homework yet.
a. doesn't finish b. hadn't finished c. didn't finish d. haven't finished
- What is the primary purpose of an argumentative essay?
a. To entertain the reader.
b. To inform the reader about a topic.
c. To persuade the reader to accept a particular point of view.
d. To describe a sequence of events.
- Which of the following is essential in the conclusion of an argumentative essay?
a. Introducing new arguments
b. Restating the thesis and summarizing key points
c. Providing a detailed background of the topic
d. Including personal anecdotes only

B Reading Comprehension

3) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Space tourism is becoming more popular every year. Companies like SpaceX and Blue Origin are working hard to make it possible for ordinary people to travel to space. Unlike professional astronauts, tourists do not need years of training, but safety remains a top priority.

Trips to space can last from a few minutes to several days. Passengers experience weightlessness, see the Earth from above, and can even take photos of the planet from space. Some travelers describe the experience as life-changing because it gives them a new perspective on life and our planet.

Despite the excitement, space tourism faces many challenges. Tickets are extremely expensive, making them affordable only for very rich people. Environmental concerns are also growing because rocket launches release gases that may harm the atmosphere. Experts are working on developing green technology to make space travel more **sustainable** in the future.

As space tourism grows, some people predict that more ordinary people will be able to experience space in the next decade. Others argue that it should remain a luxury, only for those who can afford it. Either way, space tourism is changing how humans view the world and pushing the boundaries of technology and exploration.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a. Space tourism is only for professional astronauts.
 - b. Space tourism is becoming popular but faces challenges.
 - c. Rockets are harmful to the environment.
 - d. Ordinary people cannot experience space.
2. How long can space tourist trips last?
 - a. A few minutes to several days
 - b. Only a few seconds
 - c. Several weeks
 - d. Only several hours
3. Which sentence best summarizes the second paragraph?
 - a. Tourists can travel to space with professional astronauts.
 - b. Space travel is dangerous and expensive.
 - c. Tourists enjoy weightlessness and a new perspective on life.
 - d. Space tourism harms the environment.
4. Why is safety a top priority for space tourists?
 - a. Because rockets are cheap
 - b. Because tourists do not need training
 - c. Because accidents in space can be dangerous
 - d. Because tourists take photos
5. What do some people predict about space tourism in the next decade?
 - a. It will become illegal
 - b. Space tourism will stop completely
 - c. Only astronauts will go to space
 - d. More ordinary people will be able to experience space
6. Which statement shows a contrast of opinions about space tourism?
 - a. Some people love weightlessness, others dislike it.
 - b. Some people predict ordinary people will go, others think it should remain a luxury
 - c. SpaceX and Blue Origin are both rocket companies.
 - d. Trips can last a few minutes or several days
7. The word "sustainable" in the passage most likely means
 - a. Environmentally friendly
 - b. Safe
 - c. Cheap
 - d. Exciting



Translation

4) Translate the following sentences:

1. The courage to change is essential for personal growth. People who face their fears, leave bad habits behind, and try new experiences often achieve greater happiness and success in life.

- أ. الشجاعة على التغيير غير مهمة للنمو الشخصي. الأشخاص الذين يواجهون مخاوفهم ويتخلون عن العادات السيئة ويحاولون تجارب جديدة غالباً لا يحققون أي نجاح أو سعادة في حياتهم.
 ب. الشجاعة على التغيير ضرورية للنمو الشخصي. الأشخاص الذين يواجهون مخاوفهم، ويتخلون عن العادات السيئة، ويجربون تجارب جديدة غالباً يحققون سعادة ونجاح أكبر في حياتهم.
 ج. الشجاعة على التغيير ضرورية للنمو الشخصي. الأشخاص الذين لا يواجهون مخاوفهم ولا يغيرون حياتهم غالباً يحققون السعادة والنجاح في المستقبل.
 د. الشجاعة على التغيير ضرورية للنمو الشخصي. الأشخاص الذين يواجهون مخاوفهم ويغيرون حياتهم غالباً يخسرون السعادة والنجاح في المستقبل.

٢. تناول نظام غذائي متوازن يدعم الصحة العامة، يقوي جهاز المناعة، ويقلل خطر أمراض القلب والسكري.

- a. Eating a balanced diet harms overall health, weakens the immune system, and increases the risk of heart disease and diabetes.
 b. Eating a balanced diet has no effect on health, immunity, or the risk of heart disease and diabetes.
 c. Eating a balanced diet supports overall health, strengthens the immune system, and lowers the risk of heart disease and diabetes.
 d. Eating a balanced diet slightly harms health but strengthens immunity, and lowers the risk of heart disease and diabetes.



Novel

5) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the marlin's skeleton become a symbol?
 2. Why do you think Santiago said stubbornness is important?



Writing

6) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Laila has lived in Cairo since 2010. (for)
 2. Ibrahim went to Alexandria. He returned last night. (has been)

7) Write ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on: "Your Future Career"

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam has been sick and Laila is talking to her on the phone.

Laila : Hello, Mariam. Why haven't you been to school for a week?

Mariam : ❶

Laila : ❷?

Mariam : Yes, I feel much better now.

Laila : ❸?

Mariam : I am going back to school next Sunday.

Laila : Great news! We all missed you.

Mariam : Thanks. Did you have any homework?

Laila : ❹

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٥

Many people like to access information and social media easily. However, is it bad for us to spend so much time in front of a screen? On one hand, computers, tablets and smartphones are useful tools for communication with friends and family. Young people can use the internet for its educational content, learn important research skills and also see a variety of cultures from around the world. On the other hand, technology can make young people less physically active. There are also concerns that light from digital devices can cause health problems. For example, looking at screens at night can make it more difficult to sleep.

The internet has also introduced us to new words for problems that people did not have in the past. Your parents did not have cyberbullying for example. There have always been **scams**, but problems such as phishing for personal information and hacking into banks are also quite new. In the end, the solution is about balance. We need to learn how to use it carefully for the good of everyone. However, physical activity and regular sleep patterns are essential too. Balance both and we can all live in a healthy world.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the writer mainly talking about?

.....

2. For what purposes do young people use the internet?

.....

3. What is the solution to decrease the negative effects of having access to the internet?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. According to the text, people are worried that the light from tablets can cause difficulty in

a. reading b. sleeping c. turning off the screen d. writing

5. The underlined word "**scams**" means

a. scan b. upload c. dishonest plan to steal money d. post

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٥

Try to avoid mixing with bad friends who have bad habits.

.....

B. Translate into English:

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٥

اضطرت أن أعيد كتابة واجب اللغة الإنجليزية لأنني أجبت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

.....

3 Units (7, 8 & 9)



A

Vocabulary

1) Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- The depth of the bow in Japan reflects a high level of respect.
The synonym of "reflects" is
a. hides b. shows c. expresses d. ignores e. avoids
- Omar felt energetic after he started his new exercise routine.
The synonym of "energetic" is
a. active b. lazy c. lively d. tired e. sleepy
- The teacher emphasized that punctuality is a key trait of a successful student.
The synonym of "punctuality" is
a. lateness b. promptness c. timeliness d. delay e. laziness
- We must preserve our natural heritage to maintain our cultural identity.
The antonym of "preserve" is
a. protect b. keep c. destroy d. guard e. neglect
- The new infrastructure project will significantly improve the city's transportation.
The synonym of "infrastructure" is
a. framework b. base c. decoration d. interior e. furniture
- The Grand Egyptian Museum features unique artifacts from ancient history.
The antonym of "unique" is
a. rare b. special c. common d. ordinary e. singular

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- In Japan, the morning routine often includes a short meeting called to build teamwork.
a. bento b. chorei c. kimono d. namaste
- A is a scheduled period of work, common for nurses and doctors.
a. siesta b. shift c. routine d. heritage
- Many people in Spain follow a different, eating dinner as late as 10 p.m.
a. artifact b. schedule c. emergency d. dynasty
- The of the bow in Japan indicates the level of respect shown.
a. depth b. length c. weight d. speed
- "Namaste" is a traditional greeting in
a. France b. Japan c. India d. Egypt
- An is an object made by humans, typically of cultural or historical interest.
a. artifact b. treasure c. gadget d. routine
- It is important to the values passed down from our ancestors.
a. ignore b. appreciate c. destroy d. forget
- The system in the office was automated to save time.
a. security b. traditional c. artifact d. regular
- Good is vital in Japan; being late is considered disrespectful.
a. looking b. emergency c. punctuality d. heritage

16. By the time we arrived at the cinema, the movie
 a. starts b. has started c. had started d. is starting
17. After he his lunch, he went back to work.
 a. eats b. had eaten c. has eaten d. is eating
18. She English since she was five years old.
 a. is learning b. had learned c. has been learning d. learns
19. My grandfather walk five kilometers every morning when he was young.
 a. is used to b. used to c. uses to d. was used
20. I was exhausted because I all day for the exam.
 a. have studied b. study c. had been studying d. am studying
21. She since 8:00 a.m. and she still hasn't finished her work.
 a. had been writing b. has been writing c. wrote d. writes
22. Until the teacher it, I hadn't understood the lesson.
 a. explains b. explained c. has explained d. is explaining
23. My father smoke, but he quit ten years ago.
 a. used to b. is used to c. uses to d. was used to

1) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets

24. First, the students finished their lunch. Then, they started the afternoon lessons. (After)
 25. Sarah was very tired because she exercised at the gym for two hours. (had been)
 26. I had a habit of biting my nails when I was a child, but I stopped long ago. (used to)
 27. He cleaned the house, then his guests arrived. (By the time)
 28. The plane took off before we reached the airport. (already)
 29. It started raining in the morning and it didn't stop until 3:00 p.m. (had been)
 30. I didn't recognize the artifacts until the guide explained their history. (Only after)
 31. Omar played football every weekend in the past, but he doesn't anymore. (used to)
 32. She studied English for five years, then she moved to London. (before)
 33. The teacher entered the room immediately after the bell rang. (As soon as)
 34. I didn't see the Grand Egyptian Museum until last week. (Before)
 35. I wasn't in the habit of waking up early, but now I do. (didn't use to)

36. Every culture has its own daily routine, and while these habits may look different, they all help people stay organized, healthy, and connected to their traditions.

أ. لكل ثقافة روتينها اليومي الخاص، ورغم أن هذه العادات قد تبدو مختلفة، فإنها جميعاً تساعد الناس على البقاء منظمين، أصحاء، ومرتبطين بتقاليدهم.

ب. لكل الثقافات روتين واحد يومي، وهذه العادات المختلفة تجعل الناس غير منظمين وغير مرتبطين بتقاليدهم.

ج. تمتلك بعض الثقافات عادات يومية، لكنها لا تساعد الناس على الصحة أو التنظيم.

د. الروتين اليومي يجعل الناس يبتعدون عن التقاليد ولا يهتمون بصحتهم.

37. Cultural identity is a powerful force that shapes who we are, as it provides a sense of belonging and helps us value the heritage passed down by our ancestors.

أ. الهوية الثقافية قوة مؤثرة تشكل من نكون، إذ تمنحنا شعوراً بالانتماء وتساعدنا على تقدير التراث الذي ورثناه عن أجدادنا.

ب. الهوية الثقافية فكرة ضعيفة لا تؤثر في شخصية الإنسان ولا ترتبط بالتراث.

ج. الهوية الثقافية تمنع الإنسان من التقدم ولا علاقة لها بالانتماء.

د. الهوية الثقافية تقتصر فقط على الملابس التقليدية والعادات القديمة.



٢٨. يلعب المتحف المصري الكبير دوراً حيوياً في الحفاظ على تراثنا، حيث يعرض آلاف الكنوز الأثرية التي تربط ماضي مصر العريق بمستقبلها المشرق.

- a. The Grand Egyptian Museum plays a vital role in destroying our heritage, displaying thousands of artifacts that connect Egypt's ancient past with its bright future.
- b. The Great Egyptian Museum plays a simple role in preserving our heritage, displaying thousands of treasures that connect Egypt's ancient past with its dark future.
- c. The Grand Egyptian Museum plays a vital role in preserving our heritage, displaying thousands of archaeological treasures that connect Egypt's ancient past with its bright future.
- d. The Grand Egyptian Museum plays a vital role in preserving our lifestyle, displaying millions of treasures that connect Egypt's ancient past with its modern present.

٢٩. الالتزام بالمواعيد والاحترام المتبادل قيم أساسية في العديد من الثقافات، حيث تساعد على بناء جسور التواصل وفهم الآخرين بشكل أفضل.

- a. Punctuality and mutual respect are essential values in many cultures, helping to build bridges of communication and understand others better.
- b. Punctuality and mutual respect are useless values in many cultures, helping to build bridges of communication and understand others worse.
- c. Promptness and mutual ignore are essential values in few cultures, helping to build walls of communication and understand others better.
- d. Punctuality and self-respect are essential values in many cultures, helping to build bridges of transportation and understand others better.



Reading Comprehension

In today's fast-paced world, many people worry that modern technology is making us forget our roots. However, cultural identity remains a powerful force that connects individuals to the past. Every culture has its own unique traditions, from the way people greet each other to the food they eat. For instance, while some cultures value a quick handshake, others, like in Kenya or Japan, see greetings as a long-standing tradition of respect and social connection.

Museums play a vital role in preserving this heritage. The opening of the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a perfect example of how a country can celebrate its history. This massive project allows young Egyptians to explore thousands of artifacts that had been hidden for years. By seeing the treasures of King Tutankhamun, students begin to appreciate the achievements of their ancestors and understand how ancient traditions have shaped modern life.

Preserving heritage is not just about looking at the past; it is about building a bridge to the future. When young people engage with their culture through school projects or museum visits, they develop a sense of pride and belonging. This helps them stay motivated and confident as they navigate a globalized world. Understanding where we come from is the best way to decide where we are going.

1. The main idea of the passage is that
 - a. technology has destroyed all traditions
 - b. museums are only for tourists
 - c. cultural identity and heritage connect our past to our future
 - d. King Tutankhamun was the only important leader
2. Greetings in Kenya and Japan are a sign of
 - a. being in a hurry
 - b. modern technology
 - c. respect and social connection
 - d. wasting time
3. The Grand Egyptian Museum is an example of
 - a. preserving and celebrating national heritage
 - b. learning computer science

- c. the only museum in the world d. a shopping mall
4. Learning about ancestors helps young people feel
a. fear and worry b. isolation c. pride and belonging d. confusion
5. The word "artifacts" refers to
a. modern digital gadgets b. objects made by humans in the past
c. futuristic buildings d. types of art only
6. Understanding our past helps us
a. forget our daily routine b. decide our direction in the future
c. stop using technology d. live exactly like ancient people
7. The passage suggests that technology
a. makes some people worry about losing their roots b. is the only way to save heritage
c. has no effect on identity d. is more important than history
8. Engaging with culture makes students more
a. aggressive b. motivated and confident c. shy and restless d. lazy and bored



Writing

9. In a Personal Journal, phrases like "I felt so proud when..." or "I've been wondering if..." are used to show
a. formal academic facts b. personal reflections and feelings
c. a biased political opinion d. a technical manual instruction
10. The purpose of using first-person pronouns in a journal is to make the writing
a. personal and informal b. professional and distant
c. difficult for others to read d. suitable for a scientific report
11. In an essay about culture, a Thesis Statement is used to
a. list the table of contents b. state the main argument or central idea
c. provide a list of vocabulary words d. greet the reader politely
12. The phrase "All in all" or "To sum up" is typically used in the
a. introductory paragraph b. body paragraph c. conclusion d. title

1) Write about (120–150) words on ONE of the following:

- a. Personal Journal
"A day I will never forget at the Grand Egyptian Museum"
- b. An Opinion Essay
"The importance of maintaining cultural traditions in a digital world"
- c. A Reflective Paragraph
"A healthy habit you have recently started and how it has changed your daily energy levels"
- d. A Descriptive Paragraph
"A traditional greeting or festival in your country and what it represents for your community"



The Novel

Answer the following questions:

- In the past, people thought Santiago was unlucky. How do the villagers treat him now, and what does their nod show?
- How does Manolin practicing his knots show that skills are being passed from the old generation to the new?
- How do the villagers show they respect Santiago when they see him walking?
- According to Santiago, what three things must a good fisherman know about a fish?



Unit 10

Shopping and Money

Learning Outcomes

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| Reading | <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Use key shopping-related vocabulary.- Interpret written materials such as product descriptions, posters, and texts on online vs. in-store shopping. |
| language | <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Use different grammatical structures to express the future (will, present simple or present continuous). |
| Listening | <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Listen for key information in conversations, announcements, and dialogs about shopping, discounts, and payment methods. |
| Writing | <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Write a short organized and visually attractive poster about "Back to School Bargains".- Create persuasive and informative content, such as posters, including prices, features, and deals. |
| Speaking | <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Discuss personal shopping habits, preferences, and experiences with peers.- Explain and justify smart shopping strategies using appropriate vocabulary and grammar. |

Shopping and Money

- 1 Smart Shopping Tips
2 At the Store



Key Vocabulary

durability ⁽ⁿ⁾	متانة / قدرة على التحمل	warranty ⁽ⁿ⁾	ضمان	store ^(n/v)	متجر / يخزن
impulse ⁽ⁿ⁾	اندفاع / نزوة	cancellation ⁽ⁿ⁾	إلغاء	tip ⁽ⁿ⁾	نصيحة / بقتيش
purchase ^(n/v)	شراء / يشتري	receipt ⁽ⁿ⁾	إيصال / فاتورة	quality ⁽ⁿ⁾	جودة
overspend ^(v)	يسرف في الانفاق	rating ⁽ⁿ⁾	تقييم	quantity ⁽ⁿ⁾	كمية
coupon ⁽ⁿ⁾	قسمة خصم	promotion ⁽ⁿ⁾	عرض ترويجي / ترقية	wireless ^(adj)	لاسلكي
promo code ⁽ⁿ⁾	كود خصم	discount ⁽ⁿ⁾	خصم / تخفيض	tax ⁽ⁿ⁾	ضريبة

Main Vocabulary

payment ⁽ⁿ⁾	دفع / سداد	thoughtful ^(adj)	متأن / واسع الحيلة	battery life ⁽ⁿ⁾	عمر البطارية
sale ⁽ⁿ⁾	تخفيضات / بيع	convenient ^(adj)	ملائم / مناسب	customer ⁽ⁿ⁾	زبون
deal ^(n/v)	صفقة / يتعامل	limited ^(adj)	محدود	item ⁽ⁿ⁾	قطعة / سلعة
shipping ⁽ⁿ⁾	الشحن	manufacture ^(v)	يصنع	exchange ^(n/v)	يبدل / استبدال
sales associate ⁽ⁿ⁾	موظف مبيعات	worth ^(n/v/adj)	يستحق / قيمة	conditions ⁽ⁿ⁾	شروط
material ⁽ⁿ⁾	خامة / مادة خام	secure ^(adj/v)	أمن / يؤمن	confirm ^(v)	يؤكد
review ⁽ⁿ⁾	تقييم / مراجعة	imported ^(adj)	مستورد	protection ⁽ⁿ⁾	حماية
marketing ⁽ⁿ⁾	التسويق	scan ^(v)	يمسح / يفحص إلكترونيًا	smart ^(adj)	ذكي / وسيم
checkout ⁽ⁿ⁾	مكان الدفع	description ⁽ⁿ⁾	وصف	compare ^(v)	يقارن
defect ⁽ⁿ⁾	عيب / خلل	product ⁽ⁿ⁾	منتج	competitor ⁽ⁿ⁾	منافس
deadline ⁽ⁿ⁾	الموعد النهائي	brand ⁽ⁿ⁾	علامة تجارية / ماركة	policy ⁽ⁿ⁾	سياسة
discounted ^(adj)	مخفض السعر	method ⁽ⁿ⁾	طريقة	principle ⁽ⁿ⁾	مبدأ / قاعدة أساسية
features ⁽ⁿ⁾	خصائص / مميزات	register ^(n/v)	يسجل / آلة تسجيل / عداد	earbuds ⁽ⁿ⁾	سماعات
accidental ^(adj)	غير مقصود	originally ^(adv)	في الأصل	case ⁽ⁿ⁾	جواب (سماعة / تليفون...)
sweat-resistant ^(adj)	مقاوم للعرق	price-match ^(v)	يطابق السعر		

Collocations

make a list	يعد قائمة	meet your needs	يلبي احتياجاتك
make purchases	يقوم بشراء	meet conditions	يستوفي الشروط
make sure	يتأكد	save money	يوفر نقود
make decisions	يتخذ قرارات	go shopping	يتسوق
check product description	يراجع وصف المنتج	pay extra tax	يدفع ضريبة إضافية
give tips	يعطي نصائح	compare prices	يقارن الأسعار
give details	يعطي تفاصيل	offer a discount	يقدم خصمًا

Expressions & Prepositions

smart shopping tips	نصائح التسوق الذكي	on sale	معروض للبيع / مخفض السعر
impulse purchases	مشتريات اندفاعية	end up	ينتهي به الأمر
quality over quantity	الجودة أهم من الكمية	wear out	يبلل / يتلف
seller's ratings	تقييمات البائع	noise-cancellation	إلغاء الضوضاء / مانع الضوضاء
a one-year limited warranty	ضمان محدود لمدة سنة	in like-new condition	في حالة جديدة
a protection plan	خطة حماية	in-store shopping	التسوق من المتجر
marketing trick	خدعة تسويقية	at different prices	بأسعار مختلفة
payment methods	طرق الدفع	in the long run	على المدى الطويل
return policy	سياسة الاسترجاع	get free shipping	يحصل على شحن مجاني
get the best value for money	يحصل على أفضل قيمة	personal information	معلومات شخصية

Definitions

durability	المقاومة	▶ the ability of a product to last for a long time without breaking or wearing out
impulse purchases	شراء اندفاعي	▶ items bought suddenly without planning or careful thinking
quality over quantity	الجودة أهم من الكمية	▶ choosing fewer items of better quality instead of many cheap ones
overspend	يسرف في الانفاق	▶ spend more money than you can afford or planned to spend
coupon	كوبون	▶ vouchers that give customers a discount on products or services
wireless	لاسلكي	▶ devices that work without using cables or wires
tax	ضريبة	▶ extra money added to the price of goods or services and paid to the government
warranty	ضمان	▶ a written guarantee that a product will be repaired or replaced if it has a defect within a certain time
smart shopping	تسوق ذكي	▶ buying items wisely by comparing prices, quality, and needs
protection plan	خطة حماية	▶ an extra paid service that covers damage, loss, or repairs beyond the warranty
receipt	إيصال	▶ a printed or digital paper that proves you have paid for something (sales slip)

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
impulse	اندفاع	sudden desire, instinct, motivation	planning, self-control
wireless	لاسلكي	radio-based, cable-free	wired, cabled
cancellation	إلغاء	calling off, stopping, elimination	confirmation, approval
discount	تخفيض	reduction, decrease, cut	addition, increase, rise
overspend	يسرف	spend too much, waste money	save, economize
purchase	شراء / يشتري	buy, get, invest, shop	sell, sale, return
thoughtful	واسع الحيلة	careful, considerate	careless, thoughtless, rude
convenient	مناسب	acceptable, suitable, favorable	inconvenient, improper, difficult
limited	محدود	restricted, bound, finite	unlimited, plentiful
long run	على المدى الطويل	over time, eventually	short term, immediately

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
cancel	يلغي	cancellation	الغاء	cancelable	قابل للإلغاء
limit	يحد من	limit	حد	limited	محدود
discount	يخفض	discount	تخفيض	discounted	مخفض
pay	يدفع	payment	دفع	paid	مدفوع
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

warranty	ضمان (مجاني عند شراء سلع)	protection plan	خطة حماية (مدفوعة باختيار الزبون)
change	يغير / تغيير / فكة	exchange	يستبدل / استبدال
shipping	الشحن	shopping	التسوق
quantity	الكمية	quality	الجودة
online shopping	تسوق عبر الانترنت	in-store shopping	تسوق في المتجر
choice	اختيار	choose	يختار
review	تقييم / مراجعة	view	رأي / منظر
worth	قيمة / يستحق	worse	أسوأ
cause	سبب	result	نتيجة
policy	سياسة / قواعد	politics	السياسة (الحكم والأحزاب)
smart shopping	شراء بتخطيط	impulse purchases	شراء بدون تفكير
amount	كمية (لغير المعدود)	quantity	عدد / كمية (للمعدود)
deadline	موعد نهائي	headline	عنوان
compare	يقارن	compete	يتنافس
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	do the shopping	يقوم بشراء مستلزمات المنزل
fun	متعة / ممتع (نشاط أو تجربة)	funny	مضحك / غريب (شخص أو موقف أو قصة)
regret + ing	يندم على شيء حصل في الماضي	regret + to + inf.	يأسف لإخبار أو إعلان شيء الآن أو لاحقاً

discount, promotion & coupon

discount	خصم / تخفيض في السعر	The store offers a discount on all shoes.
promotion	عرض ترويجي	The company launched a promotion to increase sales.
coupon	قسمة خصم / كوبون	I used a coupon to get 20% off my purchase.

pair, double & couple

pair	زوج من (جزئين لشيء واحد)	I bought a pair of shoes.
double	مزدوج / ضعف	I ordered a double portion of rice.
couple	اثنان / ثنائي (غالباً أشخاص)	A couple of friends visited me yesterday.



" Smart Shopping Tips "

What should we avoid when shopping online ?

Shopping can be fun, but it's easy to overspend⁽¹⁾ or buy things you don't really need. Smart shopping is about making thoughtful⁽²⁾ decisions and getting the best value for your money. One of the most important tips⁽³⁾ is to make a list before you go shopping. This helps you focus on what you really need and avoid impulse⁽⁴⁾ purchases⁽⁵⁾.

Another tip is to compare prices. Many stores⁽⁶⁾ sell the same items at different prices, and online shopping makes it easier to find the best deals⁽⁷⁾. Look for discounts⁽⁸⁾, promotions⁽⁹⁾, or coupons⁽¹⁰⁾, but make sure⁽¹¹⁾ the sale is real and not just a marketing trick.

Quality over quantity is another important idea. Buying cheaper items may seem like a good choice⁽¹²⁾, but if they break or wear out⁽¹³⁾ quickly, you end up spending more in the long run. Always check the materials⁽¹⁴⁾, reviews, and durability⁽¹⁵⁾ before buying. Finally, be careful with online shopping.

While it's convenient⁽¹⁶⁾, it's important to read product descriptions carefully and check the seller's ratings. Avoid sharing too much personal information and always use secure⁽¹⁷⁾ payment⁽¹⁸⁾ methods.

By following these smart shopping tips, you can save money, avoid waste, and make purchases that truly meet your needs.



- (١) يسرف
- (٢) حكيم
- (٣) نصائح
- (٤) نزوة/اندفاع
- (٥) شراء
- (٦) متاجر
- (٧) صفقات
- (٨) تخفيض
- (٩) عروض ترويجية
- (١٠) كوپونات
- (١١) يتأكد
- (١٢) اختيار
- (١٣) يتلف
- (١٤) خامات
- (١٥) متانة
- (١٦) مناسب
- (١٧) امن
- (١٨) دفع



Listening



At the store

Sales Associate

Hi there! Can I help you find something?

Customer

Yes, I'm looking for wireless earbuds. Do you have any on sale?

Sales Associate

We do. This brand is 20% off today. The regular price is \$79.99, but with the discount it's about \$64 plus tax.

Customer

Nice. Do they come with a warranty?

Sales Associate

One-year limited warranty. They're sweat-resistant and have a 24-hour battery with the case.

Customer

How do they compare to this other pair?

Sales Associate

Those are \$59.99, but the battery life is shorter. Also, the cheaper pair doesn't include noise cancellation.

Customer

Do you price-match?

Sales Associate

Yes, with a current ad from a local competitor.

Customer

I saw an online promo code. Can I use it in-store?

Sales Associate

If it's from our website, yes. We can scan it at checkout.

Customer

What's your return policy?

Sales Associate

Thirty days with receipt, as long as the item is in like-new condition.

Customer

Okay, I'll go with the discounted pair. Can I pay with a debit card?

Sales Associate

Of course. Would you like to add a protection plan?

Customer

I'll pass this time, thanks.

Sales Associate

No problem. I'll ring you up at register three.



Exercise 01

Key Vocabulary

1. Toy cars made of strong plastic have good **SB R 3**
 a. smell b. durability c. size d. touch
2. The of the fabric was so high that it stayed soft after many washes. **SB R 3**
 a. quality b. adequacy c. necessity d. punctuality
3. Keep your in case you need to return the item later. **SB R 3**
 a. receipt b. shopping cart c. shopping list d. ticket
4. She made several at the online store yesterday. **SB**
 a. purchases b. durability c. warranty d. wireless
5. Many stores offer that can help you save money on your purchases. **SB**
 a. defects b. taxes c. cancellations d. coupons
6. Always remember the principle of when deciding what to buy. **SB**
 a. quantity over quality b. quality over quantity
 c. quality with quantity d. quality on quantity
7. Before buying a product, check its to make sure it will last a long time. **SB**
 a. discount b. durability c. quantity d. coupon
8. Buying items without thinking carefully can lead to unnecessary **SB**
 a. impulse b. warranty c. promo code d. durability
9. The phone comes with a two-year in case it stops working. **SB**
 a. wireless b. warranty c. tax d. cancellation
10. My new headphones are so I can listen to music without any cables. **SB**
 a. durability b. impulse c. wireless d. rating
11. I called the hotel to confirm my before the deadline. **SB**
 a. cancellation b. tax c. store d. description
12. You have to pay an extra when buying imported products. **SB**
 a. cancellation b. durability c. warranty d. tax
13. Try not to on unnecessary things while shopping online.
 a. plan b. overspend c. save d. earn
14. She used a/an to get a lower price on her first order.
 a. warranty b. impulse c. policy d. coupon
15. This covers any technical problems during normal use.
 a. review b. discount c. warranty d. receipt
16. This bag is famous for its and can be used for many years.
 a. durability b. weakness c. damage d. restriction
17. The store offered a 20% on all items.
 a. review b. discount c. exchange d. rating
18. He bought the phone on without thinking carefully.
 a. quantity b. durability c. order d. impulse
19. The cashier gave me the after payment at the counter.
 a. cancellation b. receipt c. impulse d. marketing
20. You can food safely in the fridge at home.
 a. buy b. heat c. store d. purchase
21. Bad weather caused the of the trip at the last minute.
 a. promotion b. travel c. improvement d. cancellation

22. This article offers for shopping wisely.
 a. tape b. quantities c. advises d. tips
23. Customers gave the hotel a good on the website.
 a. discount b. code c. tip d. rating
24. The..... helped increase sales in a short time.
 a. promotion b. receipt c. cancellation d. impulse
25. She decided to a new mobile phone after comparing prices online.
 a. lend b. repair c. tip d. purchase
26. The government increased the..... on luxury goods.
 a. coupon b. receipt c. tax d. quantity
27. This mouse works in a way without any cables.
 a. broken b. wireless c. electric d. noisy
28. Good clothes usually last longer than cheap ones.
 a. quantity b. amount c. quality d. discount
29. A/An is a voucher that gives customers a discount on products or services.
 a. tax b. coupon c. durability d. receipt
30. is the ability of a product to last for a long time without breaking or wearing out.
 a. Durability b. Wireless c. Warranty d. Tax
31. Buying items wisely by comparing prices, quality, and needs means.....
 a. impulse purchases b. protection plan c. marketing trick d. smart shopping



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

32. The new phone comes with a one-year for repairs. SB R 3
 a. bill b. receipt c. warranty d. recipe
33. Many shops lower their prices to attract customers from a strong in the same area.
 a. cashier b. competitor c. assistant d. employee
34. Some stores lower prices to compete with other shops.
 a. price-match b. refuse c. cancel d. ignore
35. Please go to the to pay for your items.
 a. case b. brand c. register d. competitor
36. The customer bought a protective for his new phone.
 a. register b. battery c. receipt d. case
37. The cashier will the barcode before you pay.
 a. count b. scan c. pack d. write
38. At the, items are scanned and the total price is calculated.
 a. competitor b. brand c. package d. checkout
39. Decent work helps people live with and confidence.
 a. obedience b. dignity c. demand d. danger
40. The phone was returned because of a manufacturing
 a. design b. feature c. review d. defect
41. The store allows in cash or by credit card.
 a. defect b. policy c. payment d. warranty
42. This phone is not available for..... at the moment.

- a. sale b. coupon c. impulse d. durability
43. usually takes three days inside the country.
a. Quality b. Warranty c. Durability d. Shipping
44. The new product received a positive from most customers.
a. deal b. price c. review d. advertisement
45. The store has a clear return for damaged items.
a. policy b. review c. politics d. material
46. Students can buy tickets with their ID cards.
a. thoughtful b. wireless c. discounted d. accidental
47. Make sure your online account is with a strong password.
a. public b. worth c. limited d. secure
48. Plastic is a common used in many products.
a. machine b. material c. devise d. surface
49. Safety are important in modern cars.
a. features b. defects c. purchases d. impulses
50. Buying a gift for your friend is a action.
a. limited b. thoughtful c. accidental d. careless
51. This watch is a lot of money because it is rare.
a. worth b. cost c. rating d. extra
52. Buying during sales is a decision.
a. limited b. foolish c. smart d. weak
53. It is rude to someone while they are speaking.
a. hear b. appreciate c. ignore d. thank
54. Sunscreen provides from harmful rays.
a. protection b. energy c. description d. review
55. The for submitting the project is next Monday.
a. break b. highlight c. headline d. deadline
56. They agreed to the broken phone for a new one.
a. pay b. import c. repair d. exchange
57. The charger is too short to reach the socket.
a. battery b. cable c. screen d. cover
58. We are waiting for the teacher to the exam date.
a. confirm b. forget c. refuse d. explain
59. She works as a sales in a clothing shop.
a. customer b. owner c. associate d. visitor
60. You should prices before buying anything.
a. compete b. compare c. count d. change



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

61. He ended paying more than he expected.
a. at b. on c. up d. with
62. Many people prefer to purchases online instead of going to stores.
a. make b. give c. do d. take
63. Offering a fake discount can be a marketing
a. trick b. result c. rule d. skull

64. Buying things without thinking carefully is called impulse
 a. sales b. purchases c. prices d. offers
65. This phone is designed to your needs for daily use.
 a. take b. make c. meet d. have
66. Some customers pay extra for a protection when buying electronics.
 a. politics b. method c. plan d. receipt
67. Cheap shoes may wear quickly with daily use.
 a. out b. in c. down d. off

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

68. I bought the chocolate bar on impulse while waiting in line at the store. The antonyms of the underlined word are **SB R 3**
 a. urge b. planned c. intended d. naturalness e. adaptation
69. Online shopping is convenient when you don't have time to visit stores. The antonyms of the underlined word are **SB R 3**
 a. handy b. useful c. troublesome d. helpful e. awkward
70. The cancellation of the trip made us sad. The synonym of "cancellation" is
 a. calling off b. acceptance c. confirmation d. approval e. stopping
71. The store offers a discount on shoes. The antonym of the underlined word "discount" is
 a. reduction b. increase c. addition d. decrease e. cut
72. Try not to overspend your money. The synonym of the underlined word "overspend" is
 a. spend too much b. save c. economize d. waste money e. hesitate
73. She made a purchase online. The synonym of the word "purchase" is
 a. sell b. sale c. buy d. return e. shop
74. It was thoughtful of him to help me. The synonym of the underlined word "thoughtful" is
 a. considerate b. careful c. careless d. thoughtless e. rude
75. Tickets are limited today. The antonym of the underlined word "limited" is
 a. restricted b. bound c. unlimited d. plentiful e. finite
76. Saving money helps you in the long run. The synonym of the underlined word "the long run" is
 a. short term b. eventually c. immediately d. suddenly e. over time
77. The school has wireless internet. The synonym of "wireless" is
 a. radio-based b. wired c. cabled d. cable-free e. plugged
78. He bought the watch on impulse. The antonym of the underlined word "impulse" is
 a. sudden desire b. planning c. motivation d. careful thought e. instinct
79. The cancellation was due to bad weather. The antonym of "cancellation" is
 a. calling off b. stopping c. elimination d. confirmation e. approval

صيغ وأزمنة المستقبل

Future forms and tenses

المستقبل البسيط	المضارع المستمر	المضارع البسيط	المستقبل المستمر	المستقبل التام
1 will / shall + inf. 2 (am - is - are) + going to + inf.	3 (am - is - are) + v + ing	4 التصريف الأول للفعل (V or V + s)	5 will be + ing.	6 will have + P.P.

(1) will / shall + inf.

الإثبات
Affirmation will / shall + inf.
I - we تأتي shall مع I - we
❖ We **will study** English tomorrow.
❖ I **shall build** a new house next year.

النفي
Negative won't / shan't + inf.
❖ We **won't study** English tomorrow.
❖ I **shan't build** a new house next year.

السؤال
Question Will / Shall + الفاعل + Inf. ?
❖ Will you **study** English tomorrow?
✓ Yes, we **will**. ✗ No, we **won't**.

المجهول
Passive will / shall be + inf.
❖ English **will be studied** tomorrow by us.
❖ A new house **will be built** next year.

Key
Words

الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow
soon

غداً
قريباً

in the future
in a few days

في المستقبل
في أيام قليلة

next + مدة زمنية
shortly

القادم
قريباً

Unit 10

Uses الاستخدامات

- ★ I **expect** Toka and Jana **will stay** for lunch.
- ★ Next year, I **will be** 20 years old.
- ★ I am hungry, I will have a sandwich.
- ★ That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
- ★ I'll buy you a mobile phone if you succeed.
- ★ **Will** you shut the window?
- ★ I'll resign if I don't get a pay rise.
- ★ Be quiet or I **will** punish you.

think, believe, expect, predict, hope, promise, sure, certainly, probably: مع بعض الكلمات مثل:

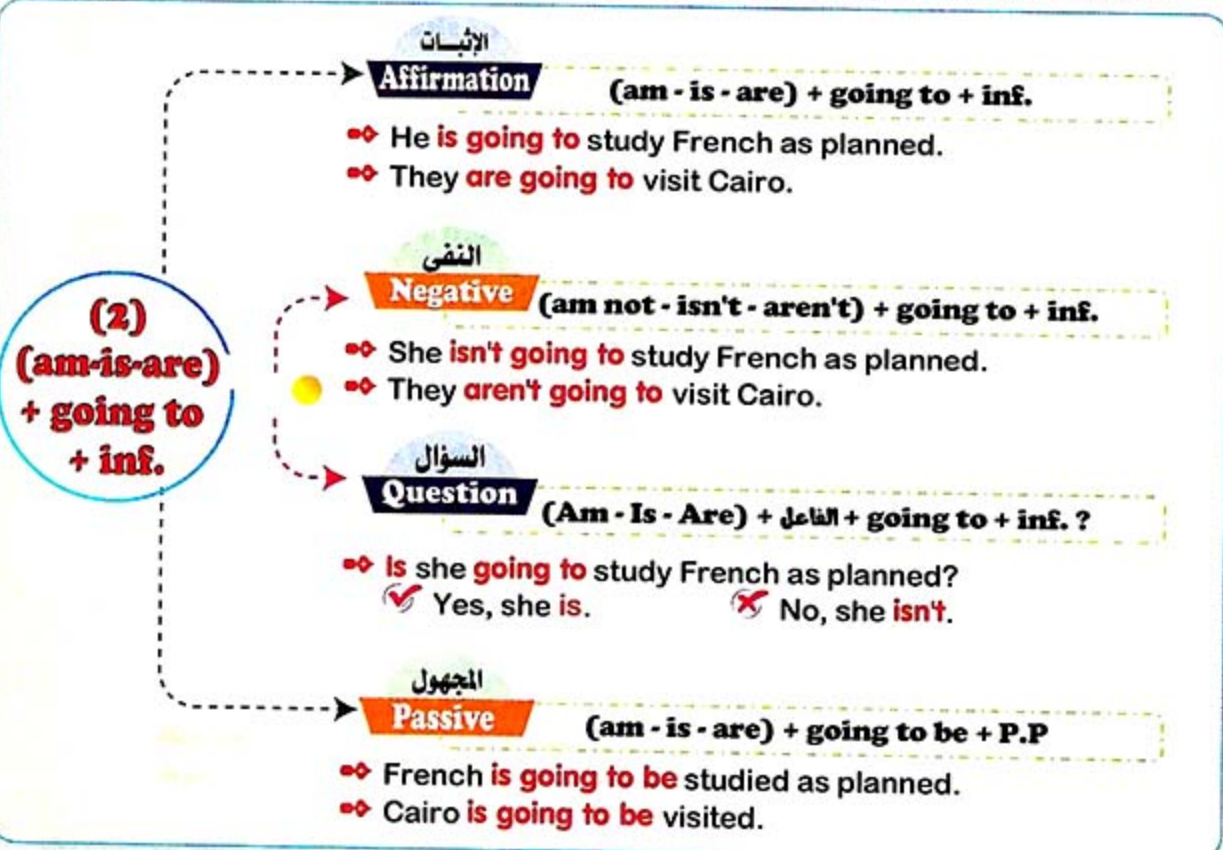
- ★ I **hope** I **will** see him tomorrow.
- ★ I **promise** I **will** visit you tomorrow.
- ★ **As soon as** she **arrives** in London, she **will** call me.
- ★ **After** I **do** my homework, I'll go to bed.
- ★ I **expect** he **will** win the race.
- ★ I **think** it **will** rain.

١٠ الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل.

- ١ تنبؤات بدون دليل
- ٢ حقائق مستقبلية (العمل)
- ٣ القرارات السريعة
- ٤ العرض
- ٥ الوعد
- ٦ الطلب
- ٧ للتهديد
- ٨ للتحذير

will + inf.	مستقبل بسيط	After	inf. / inf. + s	مضارع بسيط
		Before		
		As soon as	have / has + P.P	مضارع تام

After	inf. / inf. + s	مضارع بسيط	will + inf.	مستقبل بسيط
Before				
As soon as	have / has + P.P	مضارع تام		



Uses الاستخدامات

١ تنبؤات مع وجود دليل

- ★ It is **cloudy**. It **is going to** rain.
- ★ He **can't swim**. He **is going to** drown.

٢ الخطط المستقبلية (plan - made a plan)

- ★ Toka **is going to** play. She **has planned** that.
- ★ I **have a plan**. I **am going to** start my project.

٣ النوايا (intend - intention)

- ★ He **is going to visit** London. He **has intended** to do that.
- ★ We **are going to visit** Cairo. We **have an intention** to do that.

٤ القرارات المسبقة (decide - make a decision - made up mind)

- ★ They **have decided**, they **are going to** study abroad.
- ★ She **has made up** her **mind**. She **is going to** leave.
- ★ I've **made** my **decision**. I **am going to** travel abroad.

٥ أشياء على وشك الحدوث

- ★ **Watch out!** You're **going to** fall.

(3)

(am - is - are)

+ V + ing.

Present Continuous

الإثبات

Affirmation (am - is - are) + v + ing.

⇒ She **is studying** French as arranged.

⇒ They **are cooking** meals as prepared.

النفى

Negative (am not - isn't - aren't) + v + ing.

⇒ She **isn't studying** French as arranged.

⇒ They **aren't cooking** meals as prepared.

السؤال

Question (am - is - are) + الفاعل + v + ing?

⇒ Is she **studying** French as arranged?

✓ Yes, she **is**. ✗ No, she **isn't**.

المجهول

Passive (am - is - are) + being + P.P

⇒ French **is being studied** as arranged.

⇒ Meals **are being cooked** as prepared.

Uses الاستخدامات

١ للأحداث المرتب لها مع الكلمات:

arranged, made arrangements, prepared, booked, bought, all is okay

- ★ He **is visiting** his uncle. He **has arranged** the visit.
- ★ He **is catching** the 3 o'clock train. He **has made arrangements**.
- ★ I **am having** dinner with Toka. I **have booked** a table.

٢٠ المناسبات الاجتماعية والأنشطة الرسمية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد / سفر / زيارات / مواعيد شخصية / المسابقات

- ★ He's **getting** married next Friday.
- ★ The school inspector **is coming** on Thursday.
- ★ Our school **is taking** part in a competition next week.

٢١ عدم مقدرة فعل شيء في المستقبل نتيجة الترتيب لفعل شيء آخر.

- ★ I **can't** meet you tomorrow as I **am doing** the shopping.
- ★ She **can't** call you tonight as she **is visiting** her uncle.

(4) Present Simple (inf. or inf. + s)

الإثبات
Affirmation V or V + s → التصريح الأول للفعل

- ❖ The English class **starts** at 7.
- ❖ My train **arrives** at 7 tomorrow.

النفي
Negative (doesn't - don't) + inf.

- ❖ My train **doesn't arrive** at 7 tomorrow.
- ❖ The English class **never starts** at 7.

السؤال
Question (Does - Do) + الفاعل + inf. ?

- ❖ **Does** the train **arrive** at 7 o'clock?
✓ Yes, it **does**. ✗ No, it **doesn't**.

المجهول
Passive (is - are) + P.P

- ❖ French **is studied** at 7 o'clock.
- ❖ Meals **are cooked** every day.

Uses الاستخدامات

٢٢ حدث في المستقبل طبقاً لجدول أو تقويم (مواعيد / فتح وغلق / بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح)

- ★ The train **leaves** at 7:30 a.m.
- ★ The plane **takes** off at 9 a.m.

Between lines

٢٣ لاحظ الصفات الدائمة لا تعتبر دليل

- ★ My brother is intelligent so he **will** join a good faculty.
- ★ Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They **will** win the match easily.

٢٤ لاحظ استخدام Watch out! / Look out!

٢٥ هذه التعبيرات نستخدمها للتحذير أو للتحذير لكن مع وجود otherwise / or else / or نعتبرها تهديد لذا نستخدم (will + مصدر)

٢٦ وإذا تم استخدامها بدون (or) نعتبرها تنبؤ قائم على دليل نستخدم (going to + مصدر):

- ★ Be careful or you **will** break it.
- ★ Be careful! You **are going to** break it.
- ★ Watch out! You **are going to** hurt yourself.

(think / believe / sure)

٢٧ بعض الكلمات الدالة على will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم be going to

- ★ I think it **will** rain.
- ★ It is cloudy. I think it **is going to** rain.



Exercise 01 Language Level 1

1. I'm really hungry. I think I a pizza tonight. SB R 3
 a. will order b. am going to order c. orders d. am ordering
2. We shop at the new mall on Friday. SB R 3
 a. are going to b. going to c. will be d. having
3. They to Tokyo next week. The flights are booked. SB R 3
 a. will travel b. are going to travel c. traveled d. are traveling
4. Look at this old house; it probably fall down. SB
 a. will be b. is going to c. is d. will
5. Al the work of teachers and doctors. SB
 a. is going to do b. do c. will do d. is going to do
6. The doorbell is ringing! I it. SB
 a. open b. am going to open c. am opening d. 'll open
7. I you the money you need. SB
 a. will lend b. lend c. am lending d. am going to lend
8. Look at this pregnant woman. She a baby soon. SB
 a. will have b. is having c. has d. is going to have
9. Be careful! You into a hole. SB
 a. step b. are going to step c. are stepping d. will step
10. I think people smarter shopping apps in the future. SB
 a. will use b. used c. are used d. has used
11. They a list before they go to the mall. SB
 a. have made b. had made c. are making d. will make
12. Study hard or the teacher you. المنقرة ٢٠٢٤
 a. is punishing b. will punish c. punishes d. is going to punish
13. We have already made all the preparations. We our sister's wedding party tomorrow. قطر ٢٠٢٤
 a. will give b. is going to give c. are giving d. gives
14. Though prices are sky high in the USA. I there sooner or later, I have made up my mind. المنطقة ٢٠٢٤
 a. am going to live b. will live c. won't live d. was living
15. They a party next week. Everything is arranged. قطر ٢٠٢٤
 a. have b. are having c. are going to have d. have had
16. A: I don't know how to operate my laptop. B: Don't worry, I you. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
 a. show b. am going to show c. am showing d. will show
17. The sky is very cloudy. It طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. will rain b. is raining c. is going to rain d. rains
18. The first lesson at 8 a.m. as soon as the bell has rung. نقادة منازل ٢٠٢٤
 a. will start b. start c. started d. starts
19. Hany studies too much, so he to get high marks. العمرائية ٢٠٢٤
 a. 'll go b. 'd go c. is going d. has gone
20. Dad our flat next week. It's his plan. الاقصر اسنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. is painting b. is going to paint c. will paint d. paints
21. He hasn't studied hard. I think he this exam. غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤
 a. will fail b. fails c. is going to fail d. failed

22. We are busy at home. We a party. القوس ٢-٢٤
 a. give b. are giving c. have given d. gave
23. Currently, Ayman is driving at a breakneck speed, so he a grave accident. القيومية ٢-٢٤
 a. will make b. is making c. will be making d. is going to make
24. Osama is studying medicine. He a doctor. الخانكة ٢-٢٤
 a. is going to be b. will be c. has to be d. is being
25. The glass is at the edge of the table, it القوسية ٢-٢٤
 a. will fall b. going to fall c. is going to fall d. is falling
26. I you if you don't stop making noise. بنها ٢-٢٤
 a. will punish b. punish c. would punish d. punishing
27. What do you intend to study when you join university? - I engineering. اسيوته ابوتيج ٢-٢٤
 a. will study b. study c. am going to study d. would study
28. help me with this heavy bag, please? اسيوته منازل ٢-٢٤
 a. Are you b. Are you going to c. Must you d. Will you
29. My sister to England tomorrow. She's got the ticket. قها ٢-٢٤
 a. will travel b. is travelling c. travels d. is going to travel
30. My son's birthday next Sunday. اسيوته ابوتيج ٢-٢٤
 a. is going to be b. is being c. will have been d. will be
31. I can't meet you at 5:00 tomorrow. I my grandma. جنوب الجيرة ٢-٢٤
 a. will visit b. will have visited c. visit d. am visiting
32. He his wedding party next Thursday. He sent the invitations to his relatives. منهظنا ٢-٢٤
 a. is giving b. will give c. is going to give d. gives
33. Your bags look heavy. I you to carry them. سوهاج طما ٢-٢٤
 a. will be helped b. am helping c. will help d. help
34. You have to clean your room or your mother you. جهينة ٢-٢٤
 a. will punish b. is punishing c. will have punished d. going to punish
35. anything next Saturday? سوهاج ٢-٢٤
 a. Will you doing b. Have you done c. Do you do d. Are you doing
36. I faxed and e-mailed the factory in China, so I next week. ملوي ٢-٢٤
 a. am travelling b. will travel c. travel d. am going to travel
37. The instructions are very easy, I them to you. النيا ٢-٢٤
 a. has explained b. explain c. will explain d. explaining
38. We the match at the stadium today, I have already bought the tickets. المحلة الكبرى ٢-٢٤
 a. will watch b. watching c. watch d. are watching
39. Scientists predict that man on the moon. شرق طنطا ٢-٢٤
 a. will live b. is going to live c. is living d. lives
40. The twins seventeen next week. What presents shall we buy for them? السويس ٢-٢٤
 a. turn b. will turn c. is turning d. going to turn
41. Batol got top marks. She the faculty she likes. فاقوس ٢-٢٤
 a. joins b. will join c. is joining d. is going to join
42. I you if you work hard. بنها ٢-٢٤
 a. am going to promote. b. will promote c. promote d. am promoting
43. Akram is filling up the bucket with water. He the car. بسين ٢-٢٤
 a. will be washed b. is washed c. washes d. is going to wash
44. What if I can't do this difficult exercise?
 a. going to happen b. won't be happening
 c. will happen d. might have happened

45. Oh, the water is boiling. I off the gas. ٢٠٢٣ كثر الشيخ
 a. will turn b. am going to turn c. am turning d. turn
46. Don't worry. I you the money you need. ٢٠٢٣ أبو حماد
 a. am lending b. am going to lend c. will lend d. lend
47. I the faculty of engineering when I grow up, it's my intention. ٢٠٢٣ الشرقية
 a. will join b. join c. am joining d. am going to join
48. Arrangements for the wedding are completed, we next Friday. ٢٠٢٣ بيا
 a. will celebrate b. celebrate c. are going to celebrate d. are celebrating
49. I think Morocco the next match.
 a. is going to win b. is winning c. win d. will win
50. Mr Ahmed married next Sunday.
 a. will get b. will have got c. is getting d. is going to get
51. There are clouds in the sky so I think it.....
 a. is raining b. will rain c. is going to rain d. will be raining
52. Don't worry. I'm sure them again soon.
 a. you see b. you're seeing c. you'll see d. you would see
53. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It..... busy there today!
 a. is being b. was c. is going to be d. has been
54. I hope to help the poor. I a doctor. That is my ambition.
 a. may be b. am going to be c. am being d. be



Exercise 04

Language Level 2

55. Which of the following sentences isn't grammatically correct? ٢٠٢٤ سوجا
 a. I promise I will get high marks. b. Be careful or you will fall
 c. The train to Aswan will leave at 5 am tomorrow. d. Sally will be 30 next week.
56. My flight to London at 9 am tomorrow. ٢٠٢٤ جرجا
 a. will be b. is being c. is d. going to be
57. My friend is clever, I think he the test easily. ٢٠٢٤ الهرم
 a. is going to passing b. will pass c. would pass d. will be passed
58. Don't be late for the cinema, the film at nine as usual. ٢٠٢٤ جنوب الجيزة خدمات
 a. will start b. starts c. is going to start d. is starting
59. I think my cousin medicine. He is very clever at science. ٢٠٢٤ سوجا اخميم
 a. is going to study b. will study c. studies d. would study
60. Look at these dark clouds. It probably rain. ٢٠٢٤ ملوي
 a. is going to b. is c. will d. shall
61. Look! There's a sandstorm. I the windows. ٢٠٢٤ بني مزار
 a. am going to close b. will be closing c. will close d. close
62. We hope a bigger house sooner or later. LM
 a. to be bought b. to be buying c. to buy d. will buy
63. Hatim promised he me on Friday. LM
 a. will visit b. would visit c. to visit d. would be visited
64. Be careful, the bus you. It is very near.
 a. isn't going to hit b. will hit c. had hit d. is going to hit
65. to Canada tomorrow? -Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa. LM
 a. Do you travel b. Are you traveling
 c. You will meet d. Are you going to travel

66. I to Sharm El Sheikh as planned.

- a. am going to go b. am going c. will go d. go

LM

67. The sky is clear. I think it

- a. is going to rain b. will rain c. isn't going to rain d. won't rain

LM



Exercise 04 Language Level 3

68. There's a good film on TV tonight. It at ten o'clock.

- a. finishes b. finish c. will finish d. will have finished

69. Gamal for his repeated bad behaviour.

- a. is punishing b. will be punishing
c. is going to punish d. is going to be punished

70. Stop making noise, or you

- a. has been punished b. will punish c. will be punished d. will be punishing

LM

71. There's a good film on TV tonight. I think that it at ten o'clock.

- a. finishes b. finish c. will finish d. will have finished

72. I hope the room before you start to study.

- a. will clean b. will be cleaned
c. is going to clean d. is going to be cleaned

LM

73. Rami is travelling at night. This means that he

- a. decided to travel b. is likely to travel
c. intended to travel d. has completed all preparations

LM

74. Which of the following doesn't express the use of "will + infinitive"?

- a. prediction with evidence b. quick decisions
c. future fact d. offering help

LM

75. Do you intend camping? - Yes, I with my friends.

- a. go / am going to go b. to go / am going to go
c. to go / going to go d. to going / am going to go

LM

76. After I my work, I to the club.

- a. finish / will go b. will finish / go
c. had gone / will go d. have gone / went

LM

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- Sara plans to buy a new jacket next week. (is going to) SB
- Tarek has bought the tickets for his flight to Riyadh tomorrow. (flying) SB
- I decided to shop online immediately. (going to) SB
- He's planning to donate his old clothes to the needy. (going to) SB
- I've invited Emad to have dinner with me tomorrow. (Emad is...) SB
- We arranged the meeting before. It will start at ten. (starting)
- I promise to help you with your project. (will)
- He decided to study engineering earlier. (going to)
- We planned everything for the trip next Friday. (travelling)
- There is strong evidence that prices will rise. (going to)
- I intend to stop using social media soon. (going to)
- Everything is ready for the party tonight. (having)

Shopping and Money

- 3 Smart Shopping Choices
4 From Cash to Apps
5 Prices and Products



Key Vocabulary

convenience ⁽ⁿ⁾ سهولة / ملائمة	interest charges ⁽ⁿ⁾ رسوم الفائدة	debit card ⁽ⁿ⁾ بطاقة خصم
convenient ^(adj) مناسب / سهل الاستخدام	monitor ^(v) يراقب / يتابع	credit card ⁽ⁿ⁾ بطاقة ائتمان
contactless ^(adj) بدون تلامس	overdraft ⁽ⁿ⁾ سحب على المكشوف	prepaid card ⁽ⁿ⁾ بطاقة مدفوعة مسبقاً
budget ⁽ⁿ⁾ ميزانية / موازنة	balance ⁽ⁿ⁾ رصيد / توازن	loyalty card ⁽ⁿ⁾ بطاقة ولاء
window-shopping مشاهدة المحلات دون شراء	notifications ⁽ⁿ⁾ إشعارات / تنبيهات	payment apps ⁽ⁿ⁾ تطبيقات الدفع
	smart choices ⁽ⁿ⁾ اختيارات ذكية	cash back ⁽ⁿ⁾ استرداد نقدي

Main Vocabulary

flexible ^(adj) مرن	fees ⁽ⁿ⁾ رسوم	cash ^(n/v) نقد / يدفع نقداً
track ^(v) يتتبع / يراقب	instant ^(adj) فوري	benefit ^(n/v) فائدة / يستفيد
manage ^(v) يدير / يتحكم في	split ^(v) يقسم / يجرى	force ^(n/v) قوة / يجبر
durable ^(adj) متين / طويل العمر	bills ⁽ⁿ⁾ فواتير	lightweight ^(adj) خفيف الوزن
drawback ⁽ⁿ⁾ عيب / سلبية	budgeting ⁽ⁿ⁾ إعداد الميزانية	amount ⁽ⁿ⁾ كمية
technical ^(adj) تقني / فني	issue ^(n/v) مشكلة / يصدر	poster ⁽ⁿ⁾ ملصق / لافتة
concise ^(adj) موجز / مختصر	occur ^(v) يحدث	audience ⁽ⁿ⁾ جمهور / مستمعون
physically ^(adv) مادياً / بدنياً / جسدياً	ultimately ^(adv) في النهاية / في المحصلة	content ⁽ⁿ⁾ محتوى
comparison ⁽ⁿ⁾ مقارنة	parallel ^(adj) متوازي / متشابه	shopper ⁽ⁿ⁾ متسوق
debt ⁽ⁿ⁾ دين	erase ^(v) يمسح	donate ^(v) يتبرع
bank account حساب بنكي	readable ^(adj) واضح للقراءة	risky ^(adj) محفوف بالمخاطر / خطير
financial ^(adj) مالي	eye-catching ^(adj) ملفت للنظر	layout ⁽ⁿ⁾ تصميم / تخطيط
unnecessary ^(adj) غير ضروري	attractive ^(adj) جذاب	slogan ⁽ⁿ⁾ شعار
appointment ⁽ⁿ⁾ موعد	accuracy ⁽ⁿ⁾ دقة	advantages ⁽ⁿ⁾ مميزات
bargain ^(n/v) صفقة / يساوم	accurate ^(adj) دقيق	disadvantages ⁽ⁿ⁾ عيوب

Collocations

manage your money تدير أموالك / تتحكم في أموالك	stay aware of يظل على دراية بـ
build credit history تبني سجل ائتمانياً	stay in control of يظل مسيطراً على
earn cashback تكسب استرداداً نقدياً	keep drinks cold يحافظ على المشروبات باردة
prevent overdraft fees تمنع رسوم السحب على المكشوف	split bills with يتقسم الفواتير مع
make shopping easier تجعل التسوق أسهل	get instant notifications يحصل على إشعارات فورية
make a list يعد قائمة	offer advantages يقدم مزايا
track spending تتابع الإنفاق	perform an operation يجري عملية جراحية
offer a wide variety يقدم تشكيلة كبيرة	avoid emotional buying يتجنب الشراء العاطفي

Expressions & Prepositions

limited-time offer عرض محدود الوقت	miss out on يفوت / يحرم نفسه من
budgeting apps تطبيقات إعداد الميزانية	pay in full يدفع بالكامل
one-size-fits-all solution حل واحد يناسب الجميع	depend on يعتمد على
special offers عروض خاصة	lead to يؤدي إلى
noise-reducing مقلل للضوضاء	useful for مفيد لـ
earn travel points يكسب نقاط سفر	pay for يدفع مقابل
high interest rates معدلات فائدة عالية	technical issues مشاكل فنية / تقنية
pros and cons مزايا و عيوب	price comparison مقارنة الأسعار

Definitions

convenient	مناسب / سهل الاستخدام	► easy to use or suitable for a particular situation
balance	رصيد	► the amount of money that you have in your bank account
overdraft	سحب على المكشوف	► an arrangement with a bank that allows you to spend more money than you have in your account
contactless	بدون تلامس	► using technology that allows payment without touching or inserting a card
notifications	اشعارات	► messages that give you information or warn you about something
budget	ميزانية	► a plan showing how much money you have and how you will spend it
debit card	بطاقة خصم	► a card that can be used to take money directly from your bank account.
credit card	بطاقة ائتمان	► a card that allows you to buy things and pay for them later
prepaid card	بطاقة مسبقة الدفع	► a card that you pay money onto before you use it to buy things
loyalty card	بطاقة ولاء	► a card that gives customers rewards or discounts when they shop regularly at a store

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
convenience	سهولة	ease, comfort, suitability	inconvenience, difficulty
smart	ذكي	clever, intelligent, wise	foolish, stupid, dull
flexible	مرن	adaptable, adjustable, elastic	firm, rigid, inflexible
monitor	يراقب	watch, track, observe	ignore, neglect
contactless	بدون تلامس	touch-free, wireless	contact, manual, physical
drawback	عيب	disadvantage, downside, cons	advantage, benefit, pros
durable	متين	enduring, lasting, permanent	weak, fragile, temporary
ultimately	في النهاية	finally, eventually	initially, temporarily
concise	مختصر	brief, short, compact	long, wordy

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
convene	convenience	convenient
contact	contact	contactless
notify	notification	notified
manage	management	manageable
finance	finance	financial



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

credit cards	بطاقة تسمح بالشراء والسداد لاحقاً	debit cards	كارت يخصم مباشرة من حسابك البنكي
debt	دين	debit	خصم بنكي
cash	نقد / يدفع نقداً	cashback	استرداد نقدي
interest	فائدة بنكية / اهتمام	interesting	ممتع
bill	فاتورة	receipt	إيصال
save	يُذخر	safe	أمن
physically	مادياً / جسدياً	contactless	بدون تلامس
payment	دفع	installment	قسط
on one hand	من ناحية	on the other hand	و من ناحية أخرى
split	يُقسم	spilt	مسكوب / سكب
bill	فاتورة	pill	حبة دواء
track	يتتبع	trick	خدعة / يخدع
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage	عيب
affect	يؤثر	effect	تأثير
accept	يقبل	except	ما عدا

however, yet, although, but, despite & on the other hand

however	ومع ذلك / لكن	I studied hard; however , I didn't get high marks.
yet	ومع ذلك / رغم ذلك	He is tired, yet he continues working.
but	لكن	I like coffee, but I don't like tea.
although	رغم أن	Although it was raining, we went out.
despite	بالرغم من (يأتي بعدها n / ing)	Despite the rain, they went out.
in spite of	بالرغم من (يأتي بعدها n / ing)	In spite of his age, he runs very quickly.
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى (فكرتين مختلفتين)	I like online shopping. On the other hand , it can be unsafe.

fee, wage, salary & fare

fee	رسوم (تدفع مقابل خدمة)	I pay a school fee every year.
wage	أجر (يُدفع مقابل العمل بالساعة أو باليوم)	He gets his wage every day.
salary	راتب (وظيفة ثابتة و يدفع شهرياً)	My father receives a monthly salary .
fare	أجرة (مواصلات)	The taxi fare is high.

earn, win, gain & beat

earn	يكسب (نتيجة عمل أو تعب)	He earns money by working hard.
win	يفوز (مسابقة أو مباراة أو جائزة)	She won the match.
gain	يكتسب (خبرة / وزن / فائدة)	He gained experience from the job.
beat	يهزم	Our team beat the other team.



From Cash to App

Paying for things today has never been more **flexible**⁽¹⁾ or **convenient**⁽²⁾. There are many ways to manage your money, each with its own **benefits** and **drawbacks**⁽³⁾. Cash is simple, easy to use, and helps you stay aware of your spending because you can **physically** see your money leaving your wallet. However, carrying large **amounts**⁽⁴⁾ of cash can be unsafe, and you might miss out on **special offers**⁽⁵⁾ or rewards. **Debit cards** take money directly from your bank **account**⁽⁶⁾, helping you avoid **debt** and **interest charges**⁽⁷⁾. Still, it's important to **monitor** your **balance**⁽⁸⁾ carefully to prevent **overdraft** fees. **Credit cards**, on the other hand, can be useful for building credit history and earning **cashback** or travel points. But if you don't pay your balance in full, high interest rates can quickly become a problem.



- (١) مرز
- (٢) مناسب
- (٣) عيوب
- (٤) كميات
- (٥) عروض خاصة
- (٦) حساب بنكي
- (٧) تكلفة الفائدة
- (٨) رصيد
- (٩) تطبيقات الدفع
- (١٠) بلا تلامس
- (١١) كارت الولاء
- (١٢) اشعارات
- (١٣) مشاكل تقنية
- (١٤) في النهاية
- (١٥) مالي

Mobile **payment apps**⁽⁹⁾ make shopping even easier. They're **contactless**⁽¹⁰⁾, quick, and can store **loyalty cards**⁽¹¹⁾ or **split bills** with friends. You also get **instant notifications**⁽¹²⁾ of each purchase, which helps you **track spending**. Yet, not every store accepts them, and **technical issues**⁽¹³⁾ sometimes occur. Some people choose **prepaid cards** or **budgeting apps** to stay in **control** of their money. **Ultimately**⁽¹⁴⁾, there's no one-size-fits-all solution. The best payment method depends on your lifestyle, your spending habits, and your **financial**⁽¹⁵⁾ goals.



Listening



Shopping in big malls has become a **common** weekend activity for many people; large malls offer **convenience**, comfort, and a wide variety of **products**. Many families enjoy going there because they will spend the day together, and they are going to try new restaurants or **explore** new shops. However, shopping in malls also has **disadvantages**, prices are sometimes high, and people often buy things they don't really need.



Modern Shopping has changed even more with online Shopping. Today, people are buying products from home, **comparing** prices easily, and reading **reviews** before making decisions. Online shopping saves time, but it also has **risks**. Sometimes the product looks different from the picture, or it arrives late.

Many people enjoy **window-shopping** because it helps them **relax**, get ideas, and **compare** products without spending money. Window-shopping also teaches people to be **patient** and think before they buy.

Smart shoppers plan their **budget** compare prices, and avoid **emotional** buying. In the future, people will use smarter tools, and malls are going to become more digital. Smart shopping means choosing what you really need and thinking carefully about how you spend your money.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Using helps you see your money physically leave your wallet, making it easier to control spending. **SB**
 a. debit cards b. cash c. credit cards d. restriction
2. You must monitor your account balance when using a..... to avoid overdraft fees. **SB**
 a. prepaid card b. credit card c. debit card d. loyalty card
3. can offer cashback and purchase protection, but may lead to high interest if not paid in full. **SB**
 a. Credit cards b. Debit cards c. Cash payments d. Mobile apps
4. payments are contactless and fast, but not all stores accept them. **SB**
 a. Prepaid b. Credit c. Cash d. Mobile
5. We use because they take money straight from our bank account, which helps us budget. **SB**
 a. prepaid cards b. credit cards c. debit cards d. loyalty cards
6. You must every purchase you make to know where your money is going. **SB**
 a. track b. financial c. credit d. debit
7. Knowing how to use and watch both credit and debit cards is key to good health. **SB**
 a. physical b. financial c. original d. medical
8. Online shopping offers great because you can buy items from home.
 a. difficulty b. risk c. delay d. convenience
9. During the pandemic, services became more popular for safety reasons.
 a. contactless b. expensive c. careless d. traditional
10. Shoppers should plan a before going shopping.
 a. receipt b. discount c. budget d. product
11. She went to the mall just for, not to buy anything.
 a. window shopping b. interest charge c. interest rate d. payment app
12. Making helps you avoid wasting money.
 a. impulse purchases b. risky actions c. sudden plans d. smart choices
13. Credit cards may add if you don't pay on time.
 a. interest charges b. discounts c. rewards d. coupons
14. Mobile apps make shopping more for busy people.
 a. risky b. convenient c. difficult d. limited
15. Parents should their children's online spending.
 a. ignore b. damage c. monitor d. forget
16. A/An happens when you spend more than your balance.
 a. offer b. overdraft c. receipt d. bonus
17. Check your account before making a payment.
 a. receipt b. offer c. coupon d. balance
18. A lets you buy now and pay later.
 a. cash b. prepaid card c. credit card d. debit card
19. A must be loaded with money before use.
 a. prepaid card b. credit card c. debit card d. loyalty card
20. systems, like Vodafone Cash, reduce the need for cash.
 a. Receipts b. Coins c. Paper bills d. Payment apps

21. Banks send instant to warn clients of activity.
 a. receipts b. notifications c. coupons d. policies
22. The bank issued a card that works without inserting it into the machine.
 a. wired b. limited c. contactless d. broken



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

23. The biggest of this phone is that its battery doesn't last long.
 a. benefit b. advantage c. drawback d. profit
24. This plastic material is very, so it can bend without breaking during daily use.
 a. strict b. weak c. fixed d. flexible
25. Some small shops prefer payment in instead of cards.
 a. debt b. cash c. balance d. credit
26. She knows how to her time between study and rest.
 a. manage b. fear c. ignore d. avoid
27. Living in often causes stress and anxiety.
 a. comfort b. safety c. debt d. freedom
28. It's hard to time if you don't plan well.
 a. waste b. lose c. track d. ignore
29. The device stopped working because of a/an problem that needed a specialist.
 a. artistic b. emotional c. technical d. cultural
30. Buying things you don't need is spending.
 a. unnecessary b. essential c. useful d. necessary
31. One major of regular exercise is better health.
 a. drawback b. benefit c. cons d. defect
32. The bank offers rewards when customers use their debit cards.
 a. cashback b. debt c. tax d. interest
33. Paying electricity and water on time helps avoid extra charges.
 a. bills b. pills c. budgets d. savings
34. helps families plan their spending and avoid financial problems.
 a. Borrowing b. Lending c. Budgeting d. Charging
35. Many banks charge extra for late payments or international transactions.
 a. salaries b. fees c. fare d. rewards
36. He felt exhausted after working for long hours without rest.
 a. carefully b. officially c. financially d. physically
37. Mobile payment apps allow transfers, so money reaches the receiver immediately.
 a. delayed b. future c. limited d. instant
38. Online shopping allows easy between products.
 a. warranty b. budget c. comparison d. receipt
39. Smart spending choices lead to financial stability.
 a. suddenly b. ultimately c. rarely d. hardly
40. Smart shoppers know how to for better prices.
 a. deliver b. cancel c. charge d. bargain
41. The phone case is enough to protect the device from damage.
 a. durable b. broken c. colorful d. limited

42. Teachers should never students to accept opinions without discussion.
 a. let b. force c. discourage d. have
43. A colorful can attract attention at school events.
 a. policy b. topic c. poster d. essay
44. High costs are among the of private education.
 a. disadvantages b. advantages c. successes d. achievements
45. She bought the jacket at a great during the sale.
 a. amount b. bargain c. fee d. delivery
46. Many teenagers lack awareness about managing money.
 a. academic b. technical c. financial d. physical
47. Accidents usually when people ignore safety rules.
 a. occur b. prevent c. control d. accept
48. Many supermarkets offer a card to encourage customers to return.
 a. loyalty b. debit c. budget d. policy
49. Opening a helps you manage your money safely.
 a. coupon b. discount c. warranty d. bank account



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

50. Online shopping platforms advantages over traditional stores.
 a. offer b. make c. take d. get
51. They need to check their situation before planning the trip.
 a. social b. financial c. mental d. emotional
52. Parents teach children to aware of online risks.
 a. have b. take c. stay d. make
53. Keeping track of your balance helps overdraft fees.
 a. increase b. prevent c. get d. stay
54. Some credit cards allow customers to cashback on everyday purchases.
 a. earn b. make c. beat d. gain
55. Creating a monthly budget helps you your money better.
 a. miss b. win c. lose d. manage
56. Students who skip revision classes often miss on important exam tips.
 a. from b. off c. out d. down
57. It is better to pay full to avoid interest charges on credit cards.
 a. with b. in c. on d. at
58. We decided to the bill equally among all friends at the restaurant.
 a. waste b. spilt c. split d. spell
59. Online shopping depends internet connection and secure payment methods.
 a. on b. in c. of d. at
60. he was very tired; he finished his homework.
 a. Although b. Since c. Because d. Therefore
61. He is young, he is very responsible.
 a. because b. so c. yet d. in addition to
62. Learning how to manage money helps students avoid difficulties in the future.
 a. educational b. financial c. physical d. emotional
63. I like online shopping., I prefer buying clothes from stores.
 a. On one hand b. As a result c. Because d. On the other hand

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

61. Online banking offers great convenience. The synonym of the underlined word "convenience" is
- a. comfort b. difficulty c. ease d. delay e. burden
62. Choosing reusable products is a smart decision that saves money. The synonym of "smart" is
- a. wise b. foolish c. hard d. lazy e. intelligent
63. The company offers flexible working hours to help employees. The antonym of the underlined word "flexible" is
- a. adjustable b. adaptable c. open d. firm e. rigid
64. Parents should monitor their children's online activity. The synonym of the underlined word "monitor" is
- a. ignore b. watch c. observe d. waste e. neglect
65. Many people prefer contactless payment methods. The synonym of the word "contactless" is
- a. touch-free b. physical c. wireless d. traditional e. manual
66. This backpack is made of durable material. The synonym of the underlined word "durable" is
- a. long-lasting b. fragile c. breakable d. weak e. enduring
67. After many challenges, the project ultimately succeeded. The synonym of the underlined word "ultimately" is
- a. immediately b. suddenly c. finally d. eventually e. briefly
68. The teacher asked students to write a concise summary. The antonym of the underlined word "concise" is
- a. brief b. wordy c. lengthy d. short e. clear
69. Saving money is a smart choice. The antonym of the underlined word "smart" is.....
- a. foolish b. clever c. intelligent d. unwise e. bright
70. Contactless payment is fast and safe. The antonym of the underlined word "contactless" is
- a. remote b. digital c. wireless d. physical e. contact



(5) **will be + V + ing**
Future Continuous

الإثبات Affirmation **will + be + v + ing**

- She **will be studying** French at 7 tomorrow.
- They **will be cooking** meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

النفى Negative **won't + be + v + ing**

- She **won't be studying** French at 7 tomorrow.
- They **won't be cooking** meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

السؤال Question **Will + الفاعل + be + ing?**

- Will she **be studying** French at 7 tomorrow?
✓ Yes, she **will**. ✗ No, she **won't**.

المجهول Passive **will + be + P.P.**

- French **will be studied** at 7 tomorrow.
- Meals **will be cooked** from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

at ... tomorrow ...

... from ... to

between ... and ...

at ... next ...

This time next ...

tomorrow morning ...

Uses

الاستخدامات

① يستخدم مع حدث سوف يكون مستمر في وقت معين في المستقبل.

★ At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he **will be working**.

② للحديث عن أحداث تم ترتيبها وتخطيطها في المستقبل.

★ At 9.30 next Tuesday, we **will be attending** her wedding party.

- Mother..... the house work between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.
a. is doing b. will have done c. will be doing d. will be
- I can't visit you because I my homework this evening.
a. will do b. will be doing c. am going to do d. will have done
- This time next year, I at university.
a. will study b. will be studied c. will be studying d. will have studied
- At ten o'clock tomorrow, Mr Ali on a train to El Gharbia!
a. travel b. will have travelled c. going to travel d. will be travelling
- I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I my homework.
a. would be doing b. will have done c. will be doing d. may do
- In the future, most of our work by machines.
a. will be doing b. has been done c. will be done d. will do

(6) will have + P.P. Future Perfect

الإثبات Affirmation **will + have + P.P.**

- By next year, I **will have finished** my studies.
- She **will have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.

النفي Negative **won't + have + P.P.**

- By next year, I **won't have finished** my studies.
- She **won't have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.

السؤال Question **Will + الفاعل + have + P.P.?**

- Will you have finished** your studies by next year?
 ✓ Yes, I **will**. ✗ No, I **won't**.

المجهول Passive **will + have + been + P.P.**

- By next year, my studies **will have been finished**.
- French **will have been studied** by 7 tomorrow.

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

by + سنة قادمة	by + next	في خلال فترة زمنية
by + tomorrow	by.. بحلول = before	This time tomorrow.....
In (a year's/four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time		

Uses

الاستخدامات

- ① يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف ينتهي في وقت معين في المستقبل.
- ★ His new house **will have been built** by 2030.
- ② يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.
- ★ Before our parents come, we **will have tidied** our room.
7. She all her homework by 10 p.m.
 a. do b. will have done c. will do d. will be doing
8. We studying this book by the end of this year.
 a. finish b. will be finishing c. will have finished d. are finishing
9. We all our exams by next week.
 a. will be finishing b. have finished c. had finished d. will have finished
10. By the end of next year, more and more trees along the road to our village.
 a. will have planted b. will plant c. will be planted d. will have been planted
11. Don't worry. Your phone by tomorrow morning.
 a. will have fixed b. is going to be fixed c. is going to fix d. will have been fixed

A Poster

ملصق / إعلان

Definition of a poster

- ★ A poster gives clear, eye-catching information about an event, product, or idea.
★ الملصق يقدم معلومات واضحة وجذابة عن حدث أو منتج أو فكرة.
- ★ It should be short, organized, and visually attractive.
★ يجب أن يكون قصيرًا، منظمًا، وجذابًا من حيث الشكل.

Key Features of a Poster

1) Plan Your Poster
خطا للملصق

- ▶ Decide the main topic (e.g., a health campaign, a school event, or a money-saving tip).
حدد الموضوع الرئيسي (مثل حملة صحية، أو حدث مدرسي، أو نصيحة لتوفير المال)
- ▶ Think about your audience - who will read it?
فكر في الجمهور المستهدف - من سيقرا الملصق؟
- ▶ Choose the key message you want people to remember.
اختر الرسالة الأساسية التي تريد أن يتذكرها الناس.

2) Organize the Content
نظم المحتوى

- ▶ Title: short, bold, and attention-grabbing.
العنوان: قصير، بارز، وجاذب للانتباه.
- ▶ Introduction or slogan: A short sentence that explains the main idea.
المقدمة أو الشعار: جملة قصيرة تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية.
- ▶ Main points: 3-4 short pieces of information (use bullet points or boxes).
النقاط الرئيسية: من 3 إلى 4 معلومات قصيرة (استخدم النقاط أو المربعات).
- ▶ Details: date, time, place, or contact info (if it's an event)..
التفاصيل: التاريخ، الوقت، المكان، أو معلومات الاتصال (إذا كان حدثًا).
- ▶ Images or graphics: use visuals to support your message.
الصور أو الرسوم: استخدم وسائل بصرية لدعم رسالتك.

3) Language Tips
نصائح لغوية

- ▶ Use simple, clear sentences and positive language.
استخدم جملًا بسيطة وواضحة ولغة إيجابية.
- ▶ Include imperatives (e.g., Join us! , Save energy! , Be smart with money!).
استخدم أسلوب الأمر (مثل: انضم إلينا!، وفر الطاقة!، كن ذكيًا في إنفاق المال!).
- ▶ Use adjectives to make it more persuasive (e.g., "fun," "exciting," "useful").
استخدم الصفات لجعل الملصق أكثر إقناعًا (مثل: ممتع، مثير، مفيد).
- ▶ Avoid long paragraphs keep it brief and direct.
تجنب الفقرات الطويلة، واجعل المحتوى مختصرًا ومباشرًا.

4) Design and Layout
التصميم والتنسيق

- ▶ Make your title big and easy to read.
اجعل العنوان كبيرًا وسهل القراءة.
- ▶ Use color, headings, and space to make information stand out.
استخدم الألوان والعناوين والمساحات لإبراز المعلومات.
- ▶ Check spelling, punctuation, and grammar before finishing.
راجع الإملاء وعلامات الترقيم والقواعد اللغوية قبل الانتهاء.



Exercise 01

Writing

- The main purpose of a poster is to
 a. tell a long story
 b. give clear and eye-catching information
 c. test students' grammar
 d. explain past events
- Which sentence is an example of an imperative used in a poster?
 a. People should save money
 b. Saving money is important
 c. Save money now
 d. Money was saved last year
- Which of the following should be AVOIDED in a poster?
 a. Bullet points
 b. Clear title
 c. Long paragraphs
 d. Short sentences
- A poster should be and attractive.
 a. boring
 b. organized
 c. careless
 d. noisy
- Adjectives in posters make ideas more
 a. formal
 b. difficult
 c. weak
 d. persuasive
- Posters usually contain main points.
 a. 3-4
 b. 6-7
 c. ten
 d. 7-8
- A poster should be from a distance.
 a. hidden
 b. broken
 c. readable
 d. folded
- Before finishing a poster, students should
 a. add more paragraphs
 b. check spelling and grammar
 c. remove the title
 d. change the topic
- Which of the following is the BEST title for a poster?
 a. I like shopping very much
 b. Shopping is something people do every day
 c. Save Money Smartly
 d. There are many ways to shop
- Which language style is BEST for a poster?
 a. Simple and clear
 b. Complicated and indirect
 c. Passive only
 d. Long and formal
- Images in a poster are used to
 a. decorate only
 b. replace all words
 c. test vocabulary
 d. support the main message
- Posters usually use instead of paragraphs.
 a. stories
 b. essays
 c. letters
 d. bullet points
- A slogan is usually a sentence.
 a. long
 b. short
 c. past
 d. passive
- The purpose of planning a poster is to ideas.
 a. organize
 b. copy
 c. delete
 d. forget
- Posters are NOT written like
 a. lists
 b. essays
 c. poems
 d. points

A Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amina made a/an buy that she later regretted.
a. deadline b. impulse c. purchase d. code
- Areej chose a jacket that would her new shoes.
a. end up b. go with c. ring up d. wear out
- A: How old are you? B: I 44 next February.
a. am b. am going to be c. will be d. am being
- Online shopping is more for busy people.
a. contactless b. convenient c. financial d. prepaid

B Translation

لا تكن متسرعاً في تصديق كل ما تسمع، فالأكاذيب والشائعات تنتشر أسرع من الحقائق.

- Don't be so fast in believing all what you hear as lies and rumours publish faster than truth.
- Don't be so quick in believing all what you hear because lies and rumours spread faster than truth.
- Don't be so quick in believing all what you hear because liars and rumours spread faster than facts.
- Don't be so fast in conveying all what you listen because lies and tricks spread faster than facts.

C Writing

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- I will do the shopping tomorrow if I have enough time. (be)
- The car engine will be checked again. (A mechanic ...)



Exercise 28

Translation

- Education serves as a beacon that points people in the direction of their best course in life. Therefore, we need to focus more on the reform of education.

أ. يعتبر التعليم هو المنارة التي ترشد الناس إلى سلوك الطريق الأمثل في الحياة. ولذلك يجب أن نولي إصلاح التعليم المزيد من التركيز.
ب. يعتبر التعليم هو الخادم الذي يرشد الناس إلى سلوك الطريق الأمثل في الحياة. ولذلك يجب أن نولي تطوير التعليم كمية من التركيز.
ج. يعتبر التعليم هو المنارة التي ترشد الناس إلى المشي في الاتجاه الصحيح في الحياة. ولذلك يجب أن نولي متابعة التعليم المزيد من التركيز.
د. يعتبر التعليم هو المنارة التي تأخذ الناس إلى سلوك الطريق الأمثل في الحياة. ولذلك يجب أن نركز كثيراً على ابتكار التعليم.

- Modern technology is used in all fields of life, it has resulted in saving time and effort, increasing production and making life more comfortable.

أ. تستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع حقول الحياة مما أدى إلى توفير الوقت والجهد وزيادة الإنتاج وجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.
ب. تستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع مجالات الحياة مما أدى إلى توفير الوقت والجهد وزيادة الإنتاج وجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.
ج. تستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع مجالات الحياة مما أدى إلى إهدار الوقت والجهد وزيادة الإنتاج وجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.
د. تستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع مجالات الحياة مما أدى إلى توفير الوقت والجهد وتخفيض الإنتاج وجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.
٢. عندما تشعر بالتوتر، عليك بممارسة الهواية أو الرياضة المفضلة لديك لبعض الوقت.

- When you feel stressed, you should practise your favourite hobby or sport for some time.
- When you feel stressful, you should practise your favourite hobby or sport for some time.
- When you feel stressed, you should practise your favourite meal or sport for some time.
- When you felt stressed, you should practice your favourite hobby and sport for some time.



General Exercises

on

Unit

10



Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- Online shopping is very convenient because it saves time. The synonym of the underlined word "convenient" is.....
a. acceptable b. difficult c. suitable d. stressful e. tiring
- Smart shoppers plan carefully so they do not overspend. The antonym of "overspend" is
a. save b. spend too much c. waste money d. spend freely e. economize

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Late payments on a may cause extra fees and interest charges.
a. debit card b. credit card c. prepaid card d. loyalty card
- Buying expensive clothes without planning is often a/an decision.
a. impulse b. careful c. formal d. logical
- Many stores offer during holidays to attract more customers.
a. taxes b. debts c. discounts d. charges
- Keeping track of your balance helps overdraft fees.
a. increase b. prevent c. get d. stay
- Spending more than you earn may lead to a serious
a. debt b. saving c. profit d. balance
- Budgeting apps help users their monthly spending easily.
a. waste b. hide c. forget d. track
- I who is calling, mum.
a. am seeing b. am going to see c. will see d. would see
- This old aged tree isn't safe to sit under. It at any time.
a. will fall b. is falling c. is going to fall d. falls
- We out today. We have booked a table in a trendy restaurant.
a. will eat b. are eating c. are going to eat d. eat
- Don't be late. The bus at exactly ten o'clock!
a. leaves b. going to leave c. has left d. left
- When planning a poster, you should first decide
a. The colors to use b. The main topic of the poster
c. The font size d. The number of images
- What kind of language should be used in a poster?
a. Long and complex b. Negative and formal
c. Simple, clear, and positive d. Difficult and academic

النسبة ٢٠٢٣

المنطق ٢٠٢٣

البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is commonly believed that only rich businessmen suffer from stress. Anyone may become ill as a result of stress if they have a lot of worry. Stress can be a friend or an enemy. It can warn you that you are under too much pressure and should change your way of life. It can kill you.

When we are very afraid and worried, our bodies produce certain chemicals to help us fight what causes us problems. These produce the energy needed to run away fast from something dangerous like a lion or a snake. The stomach, heart, skin, head and back are badly affected by stress. For example, any student in a final year can be under two

stresses. He can be under great pressure preparing for his exams and a disagreement with his parents.

Stress can also cause car accidents, heart attacks, and even suicide. Our living and working conditions, overcrowding in large cities, traffic jams, and competition for jobs may put us under stress. If you have changed jobs or moved house in recent months, you may be stressed. What can we do about stress? As with all illnesses, prevention is better than cure. To avoid stress, one should have a balanced life.

- This passage mainly deals with
 a. committing suicide
 b. joining a club
 c. stress as a psychological problem
 d. job competition
- The sentence that can best summarize the third paragraph is
 a. a happy life
 b. stress is the way to a successful life
 c. we are always frightened
 d. some causes of stress and ways to solve the problem
- When we are afraid, our bodies produce
 a. illnesses caused by fear
 b. the stresses we suffer from
 c. intentions to put an end to our life
 d. some chemicals to fight this fear
- The underlined word in the passage "illnesses" means
 a. health
 b. happiness
 c. diseases
 d. worry
- Businessmen are always under stress because
 a. they aren't busy thinking
 b. they export goods all over the world
 c. they travel around the world very often
 d. they might lose lots of money
- According to the passage, stressful life is
 a. delightful
 b. harmful
 c. useful
 d. fruitful
- If we beat stress, we would
 a. suffer from many problems
 b. start new problems
 c. stop progress and development
 d. enjoy peace of mind



Writing

- Tourism is a very essential field that enables the state to carry out useful giant projects.

- السياحة هي حقل أساسي والذي يمكن الحالة من تنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات العملاقة غير المفيدة.
 - تعتبر السياحة مجال فرعي والذي يمكن الدولة من حمل الكثير من المشروعات الصغيرة المفيدة.
 - تعتبر السياحة مجال أساسي والذي لا يمكن الدولة من تنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات العملاقة المفيدة.
 - السياحة هي مجال أساسي والذي يمكن الدولة من تنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات العملاقة المفيدة.
٢. نحن نواجه تحدياً عظيماً في إعادة بناء بلدنا الحبيب. ولذلك نحن بحاجة لعزائم الشباب القوية وإصرارهم.

- We are making a great challenge in rebuilding our beloved country. We therefore inquire the youth's strong resolve and willpower.
- We are facing a great challenge in rebuilding our beloved country. Therefore, we require the youth's strong determination and willpower.
- We are facing a great challenge in making use of our beloved country. We therefore inquire the youth's strong restoration and willpower.
- We are making a great challenge in changing our beloved country. We therefore inquire the youth's strong salvation and willpower.

Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- We made all the arrangements, and the journey is fixed for Friday. (travelling)
- He made a decision yesterday to change his job. (going to)

Answer the following questions:

- From your point of view, why is sharing raw fish important?
- Why did Santiago warn about the sea's changing moods?

Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic: "Smart Shopping"



Skills

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف



1) Complete the following dialogue:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٥

- Ahmed** Good morning, Ali. How are you?
Ali ①
Ahmed You look busy ②?
Ali I'm searching for a flat online.
Ahmed Do you want to move away?
Ali Yes, because ③
Ahmed OK, Good luck!
Ali ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٥

Of course computers are great, and have changed some people's lives for the better. However, they can cause problems too. Many people who use computers a lot can get physical problems. They find that their eyesight gets worse, for example, if they look at the screen for too long. There can be injuries in computer users' hands and arms from making the same movements thousands of times, as people do with keyboards and mouse. People who have computers are also spending more time sitting down, and less time exercising, so many of them are becoming overweight.

Other problems are psychological. One example is stress. Computers, the internet and e-mail have made many people's lives much faster. This can be very exciting, but it also means that people feel under a lot of pressure to do everything more quickly, which is stressful.

A. Answer the following questions:

A) Answer the following questions:

- How harmful are computers to the eyesight?
.....
- Why do some people think that the computer is a great invention?
.....
- Mention one of the psychological effects of the computers?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

- of exercise leads to overweight.
 a. An excess b. A lack c. Most d. A lot
- There are parts of the computer mentioned in the passage.
 a. four b. five c. three d. two

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

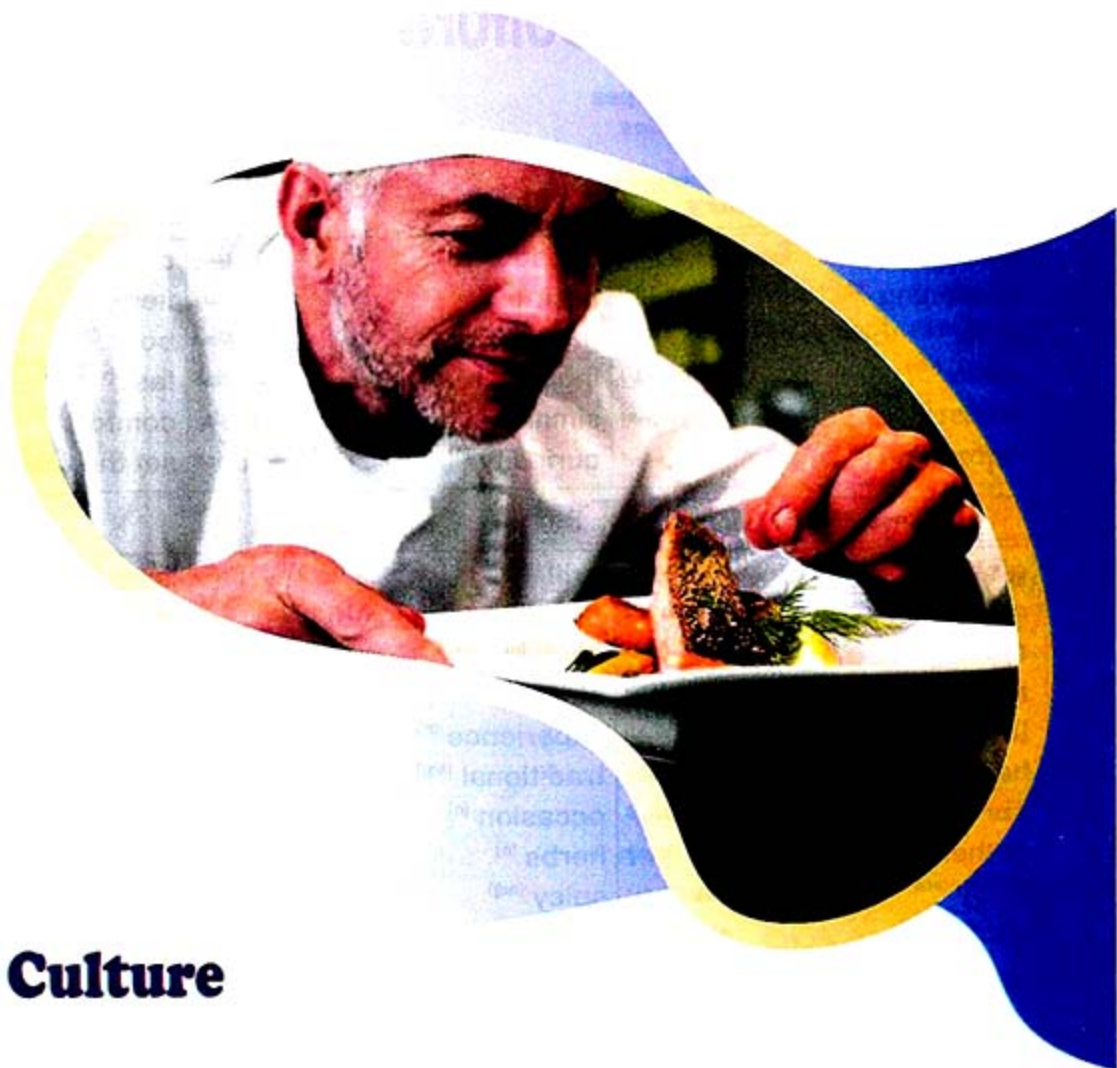
الفيوم ٢٠٢٥

Ecotourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

B. Translate into English:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٥

لا شيء يحدث في الكون إلا بإرادة الله تعالى.



Unit 11 Food & Culture

Learning Outcomes

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| Reading | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Identify key ideas and supporting details in texts about food in various countries. - Use appropriate vocabulary to compare and contrast recipes from various countries. |
| language | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Use Reported Speech in statements and questions to report what is said about food and cultures. |
| Listening | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Answer questions on food stories on an audio text. - Identify similarities and differences of speakers concerning their food experiences. |
| Writing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Writing a short paragraph about a visit to a foreign country, focusing on its customs. - Write a recipe blog, following provided instructions. |
| Speaking | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Engage in discussion with peers and the whole class about food preferences. - Discuss food memories and traditions using appropriate vocabulary and grammatical structures. |

Unit 11

Food & Culture

Lessons

- 1 Global Recipes
- 2 Food Stories



Key Vocabulary

feature (n/v)	يتميز بـ / سمة / ميزة	substitute (v/n)	يستبدل / بديل	dip (v/n)	غموس / يغمس / يغطس
seasoning (n)	توابل / بهارات	recipe (n)	وصفة	fiery (adj)	حار / لاذع
aisle (n)	ممر (في السوبرماركت أو الطائرة)	flavors (n)	نكهات	bowl (n)	وعاء / طبق
swap (v/n)	يبدل / يستبدل / تبادل	ingredients (n)	مكونات	fast (v/n) (adj)	صيام / يصوم / سريع
adjust (v)	يعدل / يضبط / يتكيف	simmer (v)	يُطهى على نار هادئة	comfort (n)	راحة / طمأنينة
refreshing (adj)	منعش	curiosity (n)	فضول	set the table	يُحضّر المائدة

Main Vocabulary

global (adj)	عالمي	grill (v/n)	يشوي / شواية	lamb (n)	لحم الضأن
outcome (n)	نتيجة / حصيلة	dish (n)	طبق / أكلة	vegetables (n)	خضروات
combine (v)	يخلط / يمزج	soup (n)	شوربة / حساء	seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
relate (v)	يربط / يتعلق بـ	stew (n)	يغنى / حساء	explore (v)	يستكشف
the globe (n)	العالم	experience (n)	تجربة	activities (n)	أنشطة / فعاليات
home-made (adj)	مصنوع في البيت	traditional (adj)	تقليدي	instructions (n)	تعليمات / إرشادات
abroad (adv)	في الخارج	occasion (n)	مناسبة	describe (v)	يصف / يوضح
gather (v)	يجمع	herbs (n)	أعشاب	cool (adj)(v)	يبرد / يهدأ / يخفف
finely (adv)	ناعماً / بدقة	spicy (adj)	حار / متبل	international (adj)	دولي
chop (v)	يقطع / يفرم	spices (n)	توابل	delicious (adj)	لذيذ / شهى
steps (n)	خطوات	olive oil (n)	زيت زيتون		

Food

garlic (n)	ثوم	dill (n)	شبت (نبات عشبي يُستخدم كتوابل)	parsley (n)	بقدونس
onions (n)	بصل	bulgur wheat (n)	البرغل	paprika (n)	بابريكا
carrots (n)	جزر	peppers (n)	فلفل	celery (n)	كرفس
mint (n)	نعناع	zucchini (n)	كوسة	saffron (n)	زعفران
yogurt (n)	زبادي	spinach (n)	سبانخ	canned tomatoes (n)	طماطم معلبة
eggplant (n)	باذنجان	chicken soup (n)	شوربة دجاج	cucumber (n)	خيار

Dishes

paella	بايالا (طبق أرز إسباني)	Masgouf	المسجوف (طبق سمك عراقي)
tabbouleh	تبولة (طبق لبناني/شامي)	street tacos	تاكوا الشارع (مكسيكي)
ratatouille	راتاتوي (طبق خضار فرنسي)	tortillas	تورتيللا (خبز مكسيكي)
Greek tzatziki	ترازيتزيكي يوناني (سلطة زبادي بالخيار والثوم)	herbs de Provence	خليط أعشاب عطرية فرنسي

Collocations

explore the world	يستكشف العالم	share meals	يتشارك الوجبات
follow steps	يتبع الخطوات	bring comfort	يجلب الراحة
come together	تجتمع / تلتصق	come straight off	ينزل مباشرة / يخرج مباشرة
gather ingredients	يجمع المقادير	add flavor	يضيف نكهة

Expressions & Prepositions

be seasoned with	يُنكه به / يُنكه به	dip... into	يغمس في / يغطس في
pressed for time	ليس لديه وقت / مستعجل	relate to	يرتبط به / يتعلق به
home-made dish	طبق محلي / مطهو في المنزل	end up	ينتهي به الأمر
taste as you go	تذوق أثناء التحضير	mix ... with	يخلط ... مع
serve ... with care	يقدم ... بعناية	filled with	مليء به
with a little curiosity	مع قليل من الفضول	on fire	مشتعل / على النار
bring people together	يجمع الناس	remind ... of	يذكر ... به
pass dishes around	يمرر الأطباق	around the globe	حول العالم
right off the grill	مباشرة من الشواية	over an open fire	فوق نار مكشوفة
order seconds	يطلب كمالة	when needed	عند الحاجة
break the fast	يفطر / يكسر صيامه	out of season	خارج الموسم / في غير موسمه

Definitions

recipe	وصفة	▶ instructions that tell you how to cook a dish
feature	يتميز به / يحتوي على	▶ includes or has something special as an important part
adjust	يضبط / يعدل	▶ to change something a little to make it better or more correct
seasoning	توابل / بهارات	▶ salt, herbs, or spices added to food to make it taste better
set the table	يُحضّر المائدة	▶ to prepare the table for eating or a meal
bowl	وعاء / طبق	▶ a deep round dish used for holding food or liquids
end up	ينتهي به الأمر	▶ to reach or come to a place, condition, or situation that was not planned or expected
fiery	حار / لاذع	▶ very hot or burning
fast (n)	صيام	▶ period of time when someone chooses not to eat or drink
lamb	لحم الضأن	▶ meat that comes from young sheep

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
global	عالمي	international, worldwide, universal	local, national, regional
simple	بسيط	easy, plain, basic	difficult, complicated, complex
refreshing	منعش	cool, pleasant, soothing	tiring, exhausting, dull
gather	يجمع	collect, assemble, bring together	divide, separate, disperse
swap	يستبدل	exchange, replace, trade	keep, retain, hold
substitute	يستبدل	replace, alternate, stand in for	keep, maintain, retain
adjust	يضبط	modify, change, adapt	ignore, fix, neglect
quick	سريع	fast, rapid, speedy	slow, delayed
healthy	صحي	fit, wholesome, nourishing	unhealthy, harmful, sickly

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافي
mix	يخلط	mixture	خليط	mixed	مخلوط
season	يتبل	seasoning	توابل	seasoned	متبل
adjust	يضبط	adjustment	ضبط	adjustable	قابل للتعديل
serve	يقدم	service	خدمة	served	مقدم
substitute	يستبدل	substitution	استبدال	substitutable	قابل للاستبدال
combine	يدمج	combination	دمج	combined	مدمج



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

flavor	نكهة	↔	favor	فضل / معروف / جميل
swap	تبادل / يبدل (اختياري)	↔	substitute	يستبدل / يبدل / تعويض اجباري (لأنه مكون غير متوفر)
seasoning (n)	توابل	↔	season (v/n)	يتبل / موسم
lime	ليمون أخضر	↔	lemon	ليمون (عصير)
fiery	حار / ناري / لاذع	↔	fairy	جنينة (كائن خيالي صغير في القصص والأساطير)
lamb	لحم الضأن	↔	lamp	مصباح
aisle	ممر	↔	island	جزيرة
dip	غموس / صلصة تؤكل مع الخبز أو الخضار	↔	drip	يقطر / قطرة
shop	يتسوق	↔	chop	يقطع
soup	شورية	↔	soap	صابون
grill	يشوي / يضع على الشواية	↔	grilled	مشوي
basis	أساس / قاعدة	↔	basic	أساسي / بسيط / ضروري
recipe	وصفة طبخ	↔	receipt	إيصال / سند شراء
curiosity	الفضول / حب الاستطلاع	↔	curious	فضولي / يحب المعرفة
produce	يُنتج	↔	product	منتج (شيء جاهز للبيع)
ingredients	مكونات الطعام / المواد المستخدمة في الطبخ	↔	components	أجزاء أو عناصر (شيء مركب أو جهاز)
try + to + inf.	يحاول فعل شيء	↔	try + gerund or noun	يجرب شيء

globe, global & globalization

globe (n)	كرة أرضية / عالم	▶ The globe shows all countries.
global (adj)	عالمي	▶ Global recipes are popular.
globalization (n)	عولمة	▶ Globalization connects countries.

taste, tasty & tasteful

taste	يتذوق / مذاق / طعم	▶ I love the sweet taste of chocolate.
tasty	لذيذ / شهوي	▶ The sandwich looks small but it's very tasty .
tasteful	ذو ذوق رفيع / أنيق / لبق	▶ She wore a tasteful dress suitable for the ceremony.

flavor, flavored & flavorful

flavor (n)	نكهة	▶ The dish has a good flavor .
flavored (adj)	منكهة	▶ Lemon- flavored yogurt is tasty.
flavorful (adj)	ملي بالنكهة	▶ The soup is flavorful .



"Global Recipes"

Trying new dishes is a delicious way to explore the world. Many global **recipes**⁽¹⁾ are simple to cook at home if you gather the right **ingredients**⁽²⁾ and follow a few basic steps. For example, **paella** from Spain **features**⁽³⁾ rice cooked with **saffron**⁽⁴⁾, vegetables, and seafood or chicken. You cook onions and peppers, add garlic and paprika, then **simmer**⁽⁵⁾ until the **flavors**⁽⁶⁾ come together. In Lebanon, **tabbouleh** is a **refreshing**⁽⁷⁾ salad: you finely chop **parsley**⁽⁸⁾, tomatoes, and mint, and mix them with bulgur wheat, lemon juice, and olive oil.

France offers **ratatouille**, a vegetable stew with **zucchini**⁽⁹⁾, eggplant, peppers, and tomatoes, **seasoned**⁽¹⁰⁾ with **herbs de Provence**. If you're pressed for time, try **Greek tzatziki**: combine yogurt, cucumber, garlic, lemon juice, and **dill**⁽¹¹⁾ for a quick and healthy **dip**⁽¹²⁾.

To shop smart, check the international **aisle**⁽¹³⁾, and don't be afraid to **swap**⁽¹⁴⁾ ingredients. You can **substitute**⁽¹⁵⁾ spinach for herbs or use canned tomatoes when fresh ones are out of season. Taste as you go, **adjust**⁽¹⁶⁾ the **seasoning**⁽¹⁷⁾, and serve your food with care. After all, we eat with our eyes first. With a little curiosity, your kitchen can take you around the globe.



- (١) وصفات
- (٢) مكونات
- (٣) تتميز بـ
- (٤) زعفران
- (٥) يطهى على نار هادئة
- (٦) نكهات
- (٧) منعش
- (٨) بقدونس
- (٩) كوسة
- (١٠) متبل / منكه
- (١١) شبت
- (١٢) شمس
- (١٣) ممر في
- (١٤) السوبرماركت
- (١٥) يبدل، يستبدل
- (١٦) يضبط، يكيّف
- (١٧) توابل



Listening



Speaker 1

(Grandma's Soup): When I was little, my grandma made chicken soup every Sunday. She'd say, Good soup should **comfort** you. We'd chop carrots and celery together.

I was **supposed** to set the table, but I always **tasted** the soup first. Now I make it for my friends when they're sick. One **bowl** brings everyone to the table.

Speaker 2

(Street Tacos): During a trip to Austin, I tried street tacos at midnight. The cook pressed fresh tortillas and said you should eat them hot, right off the grill. I was supposed to **share**, but I **ended up** ordering seconds. The salsa was **fiery**, and the **lime** cut through the heat perfectly.

Speaker 3

(Breaking the Fast): My neighbor invited me to **celebrate** the end of a fast. We were supposed to start with dates and milk. Then we shared rice with **lamb** and bright salads. I learned that you should slow down, talk, and pass dishes around. The meal tasted like welcome.





Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Paella is a famous Spanish
a. list b. picture c. landmark d. recipe SB R 3
2. You can find canned vegetables in the third of the store.
a. mural b. recipe c. aisle d. whisper SB R 3
3. Let's seats so you can see the screen better.
a. swap b. substitute c. lift d. pour SB
4. She biscuits into tea before eating them.
a. folds b. drops c. stirs d. dips SB
5. Mom always adds fresh to salad.
a. dill b. sugar c. cake d. ketchup SB
6. My uncle always the mirror before driving his car.
a. paints b. adjusts c. breaks d. folds SB
7. The salsa was so that my mouth felt like it was on fire!
a. nice b. sweet c. soft d. fiery SB
8. A bowl of warm soup can bring great when you're feeling sick.
a. danger b. comfort c. pain d. noise SB
9. A paella from Spain rice cooked with saffron, vegetables, and seafood or chicken.
a. tastes b. spoils c. features d. damages SB
10. If you don't have fresh tomatoes, you can them with canned ones.
a. move b. feature c. adjust d. substitute
11. You should add some to enhance the taste of your food.
a. aisle b. seasoning c. favor d. comfort
12. My grandmother gave me her secret for chocolate cake.
a. lamb b. dip c. lamp d. recipe
13. Gather all the before starting to cook the dish.
a. dips b. meals c. ingredients d. favors
14. Pour the soup into a large before serving.
a. plate b. ship c. dip d. bowl
15. During Ramadan, many people from sunrise to sunset.
a. fast b. swap c. dip d. simmer
16. Let the soup gently for 15 minutes.
a. dip b. adjust c. swap d. simmer
17. We had roasted for dinner yesterday.
a. lamb b. fiery c. dip d. bowl
18. On a hot day, a cold lemonade is very
a. fast b. fiery c. refreshing d. adjustable
19. The chef added various herbs to enhance the of the dish.
a. dill b. flavors c. bowl d. lamb
20. On the plane, don't stand in the
a. engine b. island c. aisle d. wing SB
21. means instructions that tell you how to cook a dish.
a. Fiery b. Recipe c. Feature d. Seasoning

22. Salt, herbs, or spices added to food to make it taste better are called
 a. fiery b. recipe c. feature d. seasoning
23. The word to reach or come to a place, condition, or situation that was not planned or expected.
 a. fast b. adjust c. end up d. feature



Exercise Ph

Main Vocabulary

SB R 3

24. The sauce was so that my mouth felt hot.
 a. sweet b. spicy c. cold d. bitter
25. To prepare the recipe, you should all the ingredients in one bowl.
 a. repeat b. remove c. combine d. waste
26. The job requires previous in dealing with customers and solving problems.
 a. experience b. pressure c. demand d. result
27. Hard work usually leads to a positive in exams and future studies.
 a. method b. outcome c. cause d. reason
28. The company has a market, not limited to one country.
 a. local b. global c. personal d. temporary
29. The menu includes such as fish and shrimp.
 a. meat b. fruit c. seafood d. bread
30. The garlic must be chopped so it mixes well.
 a. poorly b. finely c. loudly d. badly
31. You should the onions into small pieces before cooking them.
 a. fry b. boil c. chop d. bake
32. The soup gets its flavor from dried
 a. dips b. herbs c. drinks d. fruits
33. Be careful, the food is very
 a. tasteful b. plain c. soft d. spicy
34. This dish is and has been made for many years.
 a. modern b. quickly c. traditional d. tradition
35. They prepared a special meal for the
 a. reason b. occasion c. accident d. problem
36. They will the meat over hot fire.
 a. freeze b. store c. grill d. remove
37. all the ingredients in one bowl.
 a. Separate b. Throw c. Drop d. Combine
38. Can you what the place looked like?
 a. recommend b. describe c. produce d. cool
39. This cake is absolutely ! I want another piece.
 a. delicious b. curious c. abroad d. grilled
40. The teacher gave us clear on how to complete the project.
 a. activities b. instructions c. components d. products
41. All the for this recipe are fresh and natural.
 a. ingredients b. occasions c. receipts d. basis
42. Her made her ask many questions.
 a. curiosity b. silence c. laziness d. silence

43. Let the soup for a few minutes before serving.
 a. explore b. cool c. recommend d. add
44. I this restaurant—the food is amazing!
 a. explore b. describe c. recommend d. cool
45. The children are very about how things work.
 a. curious b. basic c. grilled d. abroad
46. A computer has many like the keyboard and screen.
 a. ingredients b. components c. receipts d. activities
47. There are many fun to do at the summer camp.
 a. instructions b. receipts c. activities d. basis
48. Reading and writing are skills for students.
 a. basic b. grilled c. abroad d. curious
49. We use to wash our hands before eating.
 a. soup b. soap c. receipt d. recipe
50. He worked , not in his home country.
 a. abroad b. nearby c. locally d. inside
51. People in the square to celebrate.
 a. scatter b. hide c. gather d. travel



Exercise 11

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

52. If you don't follow the map, you may end lost.
 a. on b. at c. up d. by
53. The spicy food made my mouth feel fire.
 a. in b. by c. at d. on
54. You should mix the sauce the pasta carefully.
 a. with b. on c. for d. at
55. This dish is popular the globe.
 a. at b. around c. up d. through
56. This song reminds me my childhood.
 a. about b. for c. with d. of
57. To make the recipe correctly, you must steps.
 a. mix b. ruin c. freeze d. follow
58. Before dinner, she likes to the table.
 a. watch b. set c. leave d. sit
59. She tried sushi the first time yesterday.
 a. in b. on c. for d. at
60. It's important to smart when prices are high.
 a. check b. ship c. chop d. shop
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
61. He decided to swap his usual coffee for a cup of tea today. The synonyms of the underlined word are
 a. keep b. exchange c. discard d. trade e. preserve
62. The cook had to adjust the seasoning of the food. The synonyms of the underlined word are
 a. keep the same b. modify c. ignore d. adapt e. discard

SB R 3

SB R 3

63. After working hard, nothing is like the comfort of returning home. The antonyms of the underlined word are SB R 3
- a. ease b. discomfort c. distress d. happiness e. coziness
64. This company works on an international level. The word closest in meaning to "international" is
- a. local b. regional c. global d. worldwide e. domestic
65. The exam was complicated and not simple. The word opposite in meaning to "simple" is
- a. easy b. complex c. difficult d. plain e. basic
66. The cool drink felt very pleasant on a hot day. The word "pleasant" here means
- a. refreshing b. dull c. tiring d. soothing e. boring
67. People began to gather in the hall for the ceremony. The word opposite in meaning to "gather" is
- a. join b. separate c. assemble d. collect e. scatter
68. They exchanged gifts during the party. The word "exchanged" is closest in meaning to
- a. swap b. trade c. keep d. lose e. hold
69. The players decided to swap shirts after the match. The word opposite in meaning to "swap" is
- a. keep b. replace c. exchange d. trade e. retain
70. He paid no attention to the problem. This means he chose to it.
- a. adjust b. neglect c. ignore d. modify e. adapt
71. She gave a quick response to the question. The antonym of "quick" is
- a. slow b. speedy c. fast d. rapid e. delayed
72. The instructions were very easy to follow. A word similar in meaning to "easy" is
- a. confusing b. complicated c. plain d. difficult e. simple
73. The walk in the fresh air was refreshing for the mind. A word opposite in meaning to "refreshing" is
- a. exhausting b. tiring c. pleasant d. soothing e. relaxing
74. People gathered in the square to celebrate. The synonym of "gathered" is
- a. scatter b. assemble c. bring together d. divide e. disappear



Reported statements

الجملة الخبرية في الغير مباشر



١ تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct	indirect
say	say
says	says
said	said

أى فعل لازم

direct	indirect
say to	tell
says to	tells
said to	told

٢ تحذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ويمكن استخدام **that** أو تحذف.

٣ تتحول الضمائر حسب التكلم والمخاطب كما يلي:

direct	indirect
I	he - she
we	they
our	their

direct	indirect
you (ضمير فاعل)	he - she - they
you (ضمير مفعول)	him - her - them - us
your - my (ملكية)	his - her - their - my

٤ تغيير الأزمنة كما يلي:

direct	indirect	لاحظ
play / plays	played	يتحول المضارع البسيط إلى الماضى البسيط
played	had played	يتحول الماضى البسيط إلى الماضى التام
(am / is / are) playing	(was / were) playing	يتحول المضارع المستمر إلى الماضى المستمر
(have / has) played	had played	يتحول المضارع التام إلى الماضى التام
(has / have) been playing	had been playing	يتحول المضارع التام المستمر إلى الماضى التام المستمر
(was / were) playing	had been playing	يتحول الماضى المستمر إلى الماضى التام المستمر أو كما هو
will play	would play	
shall play	would - should play	
may play	might play	
can play	could play	
must play	had to play	الأفعال الناقصة تحول إلى الماضى

٥ تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما يلي:

Direct	Indirect
now	then
this	that
these	those
here	there
last week	the week before the previous week the last week
tonight	that night

Direct	Indirect
tomorrow	the next day the following day the day after
yesterday	the day before the previous day the last day
ago	before
yet	by then
next week	the next week the following week the week after
today	that day

- ★ Toka said to Jana, "I will meet you tomorrow."
- ⇒ Toka told Jana that she would meet her the following day.
- ★ Ali said to me, "I am preparing a party now."
- ⇒ Ali told me he was preparing a party then.
- ★ Toka said, "I have my breakfast at 7 o'clock."
- ⇒ Toka said she had her breakfast at 7 o'clock.



لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية

١ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع أو المستقبل (ولا تتغير الكلمات الثلاثة على الأزمنة):

- ★ Toka says, "I don't believe this story."
- ⇒ Toka says she doesn't believe this story.

٢ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

- ★ Jana said, "If water freezes, it changes into ice."

⇒ Jana said that if water freezes, it changes into ice.

٣ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويبدل على ذلك كلمات تأتي بعد فعل القول مثل:

(now / just now / a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently)

- ★ Mr Ahmed said just now, "I have already done my work."

⇒ Mr Ahmed said just now he has already done his work.

٤ لا تتغير الأزمنة مع بعض التعبيرات مثل:

(would like / would rather / had better / should / would / could / might)

- ★ Ahmed said, "I'd rather work."
- ⇒ Ahmed said that he'd rather work.

٥ في حالة وجود **if** يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط (لا يتغير في الحالة الثانية والثالثة):

- ★ He said, "If you don't get into hospital, you won't get well."

⇒ He said if I didn't get into hospital, I wouldn't get well.

٦ في حالة وجود **wish / if only** للتعبير عن التمني أو الندم:

- ★ He said, "I wish I traveled abroad."

⇒ He said that he wished he traveled abroad.

٧ في حالة وجود **used to** بمعنى اعتاد على:

- ★ Seif said to Jana "I used to cry much when I was young."

⇒ He told Jana that he used to cry much when he was young.

We can report using different verbs

★ He said to me, "Have a nice holiday."	⇒ He wished me a nice holiday.	التمني
★ Nada said to Aya, "You stole my wallet."	⇒ Nada accused Aya of stealing her wallet.	الاتهام
★ He said, "Let's sing"	⇒ He suggested singing.	الاقتراح
★ His father said, "If you get high marks, I'll buy you a bike."	⇒ His father promised to buy him a bike if he got high marks.	الوعد
★ The thief said, "I didn't rob the house."	⇒ The thief denied robbing the house. ⇒ The thief denied that he had robbed the house.	الإنكار
★ He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend your wedding party."	⇒ He apologized for not attending my wedding party.	الاعتذار

إذا جاءت كلمة **yes** تحذف ويتحول فعل القول إلى **agree** أو أي فعل يدل على الموافقة.

★ He said to me, "Yes, I will go with you." ⇒ He agreed to go with me.

إذا جاءت كلمة **no** تحذف ويتحول فعل القول إلى **refuse** وأي فعل يدل على الرفض.

★ She said to me, "No, I won't go with you." ⇒ She refused to go with me.

إذا بدأت الجملة داخل الأقواس بـ **If** الافتراضية (للنصيحة) تحول كالتالي:

★ He said, "If I were you, I would study hard." ⇒ He advised me to study hard.

تحول **must** إلى **had to** في الماضي.

★ He said, "I must study hard." ⇒ He said that he had to study hard.

تحول **must** إلى **would have to** في المستقبل.

★ He said, "I must come tomorrow"
⇒ He said that he would have to come the following day.

لا تتحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على وجوب دائم.

★ She said, "We must obey our parents." ⇒ She said that they must obey their parents.

تحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على استنتاج إلى **must have + P.P**

★ He said to me, "Ali must be ill." ⇒ He told me that Ali must have been ill.

Between lines

بعض أفعال القول لا يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

told / persuaded / convinced / warned / reminded

★ Seif told Aya that she was lazy.

بعض أفعال القول لا يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

said / admitted / reported / answered / explained / complained / replied

★ Hani said that he came late.

يمكننا استخدام بعض الأفعال في الغير مباشر

complained, promised, admitted, explained, agreed

★ Ali admitted that he did not know the vocabulary that they needed to know.



Exercise 14 Language Level 1

1. She said that she to be a writer. السويس ٢٠٢٢
 a. want b. wants c. wanted d. is wanting
2. Karim told me that swimming his favourite sport. طما ٢٠٢٢
 a. was b. has c. is d. will
3. My father promised me that he me a mobile the following week. بركة السبع ٢٠٢٢
 a. will buy b. would buy c. bought d. had bought
4. Ali told me that he had bought his car three years الجيزة منازل ٢٠٢٢
 a. ago b. then c. before d. after
5. Rana said that she from Sadat City the following week. قلين ٢٠٢٢
 a. had returned b. was returning c. will return d. is returning
6. He said his father him to drive a car the week before. الفشن ٢٠٢٢
 a. had taught b. has taught c. teaches d. would teach
7. Ali told me that he to Cairo then. أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٢ منوف ٢٠٢٢
 a. went b. had gone c. was going d. goes
8. She said that her mother her with her homework then. روض الفرج ٢٠٢٢
 a. help b. helped c. was helping d. helping
9. She said that she two strangers enter the office two hours before. الحسينية ٢٠٢٢
 a. had seen b. saw c. has seen d. was seeing
10. Youssef said that he 16 the following month. الشهداء ٢٠٢٢ الغربية ٢٠٢٢ القوصية أسبوط ٢٠٢٢
 a. will be b. had been c. was d. would be
11. Our teacher us if we add one plus one plus one, they equal three not one. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
 a. said to b. asked c. told d. says
12. Ali said to me, "I to school until I take my pocket money". سنبلولين ٢٠٢٢
 a. didn't go b. hadn't gone c. wouldn't go d. won't go
13. My neighbor told me that she a new car a month before. للحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٢
 a. can buy b. had bought c. was buying d. will buy
14. She said that they for hours. SB R 3
 a. waited b. were waiting c. had been waiting d. have waited
15. He me, "I need to speak three languages." العريش ٢٠٢٢
 a. told b. said c. told to d. said to
16. Nada said she ate too many sweets.
 a. than b. whether c. that d. if
17. "I am tired now," she said. Choose the correct reported speech SB
 a. She said she was tired then. b. She said that she is tired now.
 c. She told that she was tired now. d. She asked that she was tired then.



Exercise 15 Language Level 2

18. The teacher said that the earth round the sun. الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢ بلبيس ٢٠٢٢ البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢ قنا ٢٠٢٢
 a. went b. goes c. is going d. has gone
19. He said that he the match when the lights went out. فاقوس ٢٠٢٢
 a. watched b. has watched c. was watching d. could watch

20. Omar says that he a report now. بنها ٢٠٢٢
 a. was writing b. would write c. had written d. is writing
21. He said just now that he a new villa next month. الفرصة ٢٠٢٢
 a. is buying b. bought c. was buying d. would buy
22. Mona says that she revising for her tests next week. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
 a. would be b. is c. was d. had been
23. He has just said that his employer him for a difficult task. البرشين ٢٠٢٢
 a. has chosen b. had chosen c. chose d. was choosing
24. Most parents complain that their sons much time on their phones. البرشين ٢٠٢٢
 a. are wasting b. had wasted c. wasted d. was wasting
25. He manager me that I could have a rest that day. العجمي ٢٠٢٢
 a. explained b. asked c. told d. said
26. Our science teacher told us that water at 100 c. صان الحجر ٢٠٢٢
 a. boiled b. have boiled c. boils d. had boiled
27. Ali has just said that he his job. طامية ٢٠٢٢
 a. leave b. will leave c. would leave d. was leaving
28. Mona told her father a moment ago that she to buy a new dress. ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢
 a. will want b. had wanted c. wants d. is wanting
29. She told me for the exam. شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٢
 a. I'm ready b. she is ready c. I was ready d. she was ready
30. Faten says that she her old car because it usually breaks down. £M
 a. was going to sell b. is going to sell c. have sold d. has been sold
31. I was that the meeting had been postponed for unknown reasons. £M
 a. said b. ordered c. advised d. told
32. Wael said, "I a bigger flat yet". £M
 a. hadn't found b. haven't been found c. haven't found d. won't be found
33. "I've typed the final report," the secretary. £M
 a. ordered b. said c. inquired d. told
34. He said that the ocean deeper than the sea.
 a. was b. will be c. is d. would be
35. My uncle explained that many people in India English.
 a. speak b. will speak c. speaks d. are speaking
36. Tamer said that he was going to see the new film about space the week.
 a. last b. after c. following d. before
37. The teacher us that today's lesson is about morals.
 a. says b. said c. tells d. told
38. He said just now that he a new car next month as planned.
 a. would buy b. will buy c. is going to buy d. buys
39. Marwan said that he feed the birds.
 a. has to b. have to c. must d. had to
40. Ahmed said that he would buy nice jacket the following week.
 a. these b. those c. that d. this

41. "I need help with my homework," Sara said. Which is the correct reported speech? **SB**

- a. Sara said that she needed help with her homework.
- b. Sara said that she needs help with her homework.
- c. Sara said she need help with her homework.
- d. Sara says that she needed help with her homework.

42. "We will visit the museum tomorrow," the teacher said. Which is the correct reported speech? **SB**

- a. The teacher said they will visit the museum the next day.
- b. The teacher said they would visit the museum the next day.
- c. The teacher said they would visit the museum tomorrow.
- d. The teacher says they will visit the museum the next day.



Exercise 9h

Language Level 3

43. He Ali had travelled to Luxor the day before.

- a. said
- b. says
- c. told

شربين ٢٠٢٢ أطفح ٢٠٢٢ منيا القمح ٢٠٢٢

d. asked

44. Nour me if she had time, she would come.

- a. asked
- b. said
- c. told

الفيوم ٢٠٢٢ قويسنا ٢٠٢٢ شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

d. spoke

45. He his father was happy to hear about his success.

- a. told
- b. said
- c. said to

قنا ٢٠٢٢ العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٢ إسنا ٢٠٢٢

d. asked

46. Ali told me that all his close friends next semester.

- a. will travel
- b. had travelled
- c. would travel

شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٢

d. were travelling

47. Ahmed not to arrive late.

- a. advised
- b. told
- c. said

قوة كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

d. was told

48. Our teacher says that he ready to help all the pupils.

- a. would be
- b. is
- c. had been

d. was

49. She promised that she me tomorrow.

- a. meet
- b. would have met
- c. will have met

d. will meet

50. Mary says that she her room every day.

- a. clean
- b. is cleaning
- c. cleaned

d. cleans

51. Ali told me that he his homework at that moment.

- a. had done
- b. has been doing
- c. will do

d. was doing

52. I knew that a new secondary school in our village recently.

- a. has built
- b. has been built
- c. had been built

d. had built

53. Bosy said that if she a car, she would arrive on time.

- a. were
- b. had
- c. has had

d. had had

54. Taher told me he would be ready for the trip.

- a. if
- b. this
- c. when

d. whether

55. The mechanic told me that the car well.

- a. had been checked
- b. had checked

- c. has been checked
- d. has checked

56. The manager stated that new workers the following month.

- a. has been employed
- b. were going to employ

- c. had been employed
- d. were going to be employed

EM

EM

EM

57. Yasser told Huda that he would finish that task the following day.

The correct direct sentence is:

EM

- Yasser said to Huda, "I'm finishing that task now."
- Yasser said to Huda, "You'll finish this task tomorrow."
- Yasser said to Huda, "I'll finish that task now."
- Yasser said to Huda, "I'll finish this task tomorrow."

58. Which of the following isn't structurally correct?

EM

- Manal inquired why I would sell my house.
- Walid said that he hasn't received a reply to his complaint yet.
- "You aren't allowed to park here," said the policeman.
- Sherif told us that he had got a visa to Canada.

59. Which of the following is structurally correct?

EM

- Gamal says he'll help me when possible.
- Islam tells me he had already received a reply to his complaint.
- Sherif inquired when the exam result will be available.
- I said that I'm responsible for the damage to her car.

60. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

EM

- Rami asked me when I would come back from Rome.
- Dalia said, "Which hobby would you like to do during the summer holiday?"
- Leila said me that she was going to attend that important conference.
- Hatim asked me what my favourite hobbies were.

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- "I have already finished my project," said Mona. (Mona said that...) SB R 3
- "Fresh food tastes better," she said. (that) SB
- Rania said to Bassem "I've won the prize." (told) SB
- "I am doing the washing now, Safia." Mom said. (then) SB
- They said, "We have just arrived." (had) SB
- The students told the teacher they didn't understand the lesson. (don't) SB
- She said that she enjoyed the voyage that day. (today) SB
- He said to me, "I'm reading a story now." (then)
- She said, "I met my friend yesterday". (the day before)
- He said to me, "I have to go to the dentist tomorrow." (He told me...)
- He said "I will marry next week". (would)
- "I am studying English now," she said. (that)
- "We live in Cairo," they told me. (They told me..)
- "I will call you tomorrow," he promised. (He promised..)
- "We can finish this project today," they said. (They said...)
- "You must be quiet during the exam," the teacher said. (The teacher said ...)
- "We are going to travel next week," my parents said. (My parents said ...)
- "I saw Mona at the party yesterday," Ali said. (Ali said ...)
- "You should use less salt next time," she said. (told me to) SB
- "I must leave now," she said. (She said ...)
- "You mustn't share your password," the teacher warned. (The teacher warned us ...)

Food & Culture

- 3 Cooking Dumplings
4 Food Traditions and Table manners
5 Recipe Blog



Key Vocabulary

steam (n/v)	بخار / يُبخَّر	dietary (adj)	غذائي	gratitude (n)	امتنان / شكر
table manners (n)	أداب المائدة	tradition (n)	تقليد / عادة	filling (n/adj)	حشوة / مشبع
allergy (n)	حساسية	hospitality (n)	حسن الضيافة	resemble (v)	يشبه
homemade (adj)	مصنوع في المنزل	dough (n)	عجين	dumplings (n)	عجائن محشوة
closeness (n)	قرب / ألفة	funeral (n)	جنازة	follow (v)	يتبع / يلاحق
out of place	غير مناسب / خارج السياق	one-size-fits-all (adj)	مقاس واحد يناسب الجميع	slurping (n/v)	الشفط بصوت أثناء الأكل أو الشرب
go hand in hand	يسير جنباً إلى جنب				

Main Vocabulary

fuel (n/v)	وقود / يمد بالطاقة	ceremony (n)	احتفال / مراسم	restaurant (n)	مطعم
guest (n)	ضيف	complicated (adj)	معقد	picnic (n/v)	نزهة / يقوم بنزهة
thankful (adj)	ممتن / شاكر	respectful (adj)	محترم	setting (n)	مكان / بيئة / إعداد
host (n/v)	مضيف / يستضيف	sign (n/v)	علامة / يوقع	magic (n/adj)	سحر / ساحر
memories (n)	ذكريات	signal (n/v)	إشارة / يُشير	clove (n)	فص
honor (n)	شرف / يُكرم	tone (n)	نبرة / أسلوب	tablespoon / tbsp	ملعقة كبيرة
represent (v)	يمثل	curious (adj)	فضولي / متسائل	replace (v)	يستبدل
approach (n/v)	أسلوب / يقترب	stick (n/v)	عصا / يلتصق	noodles (n)	نودلز / مكرونة
roll (v/n)	يلف / يدرج / لفة	upright (adj/adv)	قائم / بشكل مستقيم	stir (v)	يحرك / يقلب
unfamiliar (adj)	غير مألف	chopsticks (n)	عصيان الأكل	custom (n)	عادة / تقليد
narrator (n)	راوي	boil (v)	يغلي / يسلق	mealtime (n)	وقت الوجبة
permission (n)	إذن / سماح	fry (v)	يقلّي	similar (adj)	مشابه / مماثل
appreciation (n)	تقدير / امتنان	differences (n)	اختلافات / فروق	reaction (n)	رد فعل
prosper (v)	يزدهر / يتقدم	memory (n)	ذاكرة / ذكرى	normal (adj)	طبيعي
serve (v)	يخدم / يقدم	patience (n)	الصبر / التحمل		

Collocations

cook dumplings	يطبخ العجائن المحشوة	create memories	يُنشئ / يصنع ذكريات
follow their lead	يتبع قيادتهم / يقتدي بهم	give permission	يعطي الإذن / يسمح
hold a ceremony	يقيم مراسم / احتفال	connect families	يربط العائلات / يجمع العائلات
show appreciation	يُظهر التقدير	ask questions	يسأل أسئلة
show respect	يُظهر الاحترام	bring people together	يجمع الناس معاً
show gratitude	يُظهر الامتنان / يشكر	develop a taste	يكون ذوق / يتعود على طعم معين

Expressions & Prepositions

roll ... into	يلف ... داخل	on my own	بمفردي / بدون مساعدة أحد
on a cold day	في يوم بارد	Middle Eastern homes	منازل الشرق الأوسط
around the world	حول العالم	in the end	في النهاية
step-by-step instructions	تعليمات خطوة بخطوة	(be) supposed to	من المفترض أن / من المتوقع أن
stick ... upright	يثبت ... بشكل قائم	speak up	يتحدث بصوت عالٍ / يعبر عن رأيه
a pinch of	رشة صغيرة من (عادة للملح أو التوابل)	honor the host	يكرم المضيف
a tablespoon of	ملعقة كبيرة من (عادة للملح أو التوابل)	a sign of	علامة على / دليل على
open mind	عقل متفتح	in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره / مستعجل

Definitions

slurp	يشرب / يأكل بصوت	▶ to make a loud sound when eating or drinking something like noodles or soup
resemble	يشبه	▶ to look like or be similar to something else
funeral	جنازة	▶ a ceremony held when someone dies
allergy	حساسية	▶ a bad reaction your body has to certain foods or things (like peanuts or dust)
dietary	غذائي	▶ related to what you eat or don't eat
one-size-fits-all	مقاس واحد يناسب الجميع	▶ the same thing for everyone, without changes or differences
gratitude	الامتنان / الشكر	▶ the feeling of being thankful or showing appreciation

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
respect	احترام	honor / esteem / regard	disrespect / disregard
natural	طبيعي	normal / instinctive / usual	artificial / unnatural
respectful	محترم	polite / considerate	rude / disrespectful / impolite
closeness	قرب / ألفة	intimacy / connection / togetherness	distance / separation
hospitality	حسن الضيافة	friendliness / welcoming	unfriendliness / hostility
signal	يشير / يدل على	indicate / show / demonstrate	conceal / hide / obscure
resemble	يشبه	look like / (be) similar to	differ / contrast / vary
curious	فضولي	inquisitive / interested	indifferent / uninterested
gratitude	امتنان / شكر	thankfulness / appreciation / recognition	ingratitude / ungratefulness / disregard

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
connect	يربط / يوصل	connection	اتصال	connected	مرتبط
honor	يكرم	honor	تكريم	honorable	مشرف / جدير بالاحترام
develop	يطور	development	تطوير	developed	متطور
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم	understandable	مفهوم
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respectful	محترم



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

respectful	محترم / يظهر احترامه	↔	respected	محترم / ذو مكانة يحترمه الناس
custom	عادة / تقليد	↔	costume	زي / ملابس تنكرية
host	مضيف / صاحب المكان	↔	guest	ضيف / زائر
luck	الحظ	↔	lucky	محظوظ
tradition	عادة أو تقليد متوارث	↔	traditional	تقليدي / متعلق بالعادات
boiled	مسلق	↔	fried	مقلي
hospitality	حسن الضيافة / كرم الضيافة	↔	hostility	عدائية / عداوة
sound	صوت (بصفة عامة)	↔	voice	صوت الإنسان
signal	إشارة / يرسل إشارة	↔	single	أعزب / مفرد
funeral	جنازة	↔	funereal	جنازي / متعلق بالجنازة
in the end	في النهاية	↔	at the end of	في نهاية / عند انتهاء من

approach, approachable

approach (v)	يقرب / يتعامل مع	▶ Approach new dishes with an open mind.
approachable (adj)	سهل التعامل معه	▶ The chef is very approachable and answers questions.
approach (n)	نهج / طريقة	▶ His approach to cooking is very traditional.

gratitude, grateful & gratefully

gratitude (n)	امتنان / شكر	▶ Show your gratitude to the host after a meal.
grateful (adj)	ممتن	▶ I am grateful for your help.
gratefully (adv)	بامتنان	▶ She accepted the gift gratefully .



"Food Traditions and Table manners"

Food is more than **fuel**⁽¹⁾; it connects people to tradition. Around the world, mealtime manners show respect. In some families in the U.S., you should wait until everyone is served before you start. In India, friends and family often eat together using their hands, which is seen as a natural and **respectful**⁽²⁾ way to enjoy food. Sharing food from the same dish can also be a sign of **closeness**⁽³⁾ and **hospitality**⁽⁴⁾. In Japan, slurping noodles is normal - it **signals**⁽⁵⁾ the food is tasty. However, you shouldn't stick **chopsticks**⁽⁶⁾ upright in rice, since it **resembles**⁽⁷⁾ a **funeral**⁽⁸⁾ custom. In many Middle Eastern homes, **guests**⁽⁹⁾ are supposed to try a little of everything to **honor**⁽¹⁰⁾ the host. If you're unsure what to do, watch others and follow their lead - approach new dishes with an open mind. You could develop a taste for spicy food or realize a simple stew is exactly what you need on a cold day. Still, **speaking up** about **allergies**⁽¹¹⁾ or **dietary**⁽¹²⁾ needs; hosts should understand.



- (1) وقود
- (2) محترم / يظهر الاحترام
- (3) قرب / ألفة
- (4) حسن الضيافة / كرم الضيافة
- (5) يشير / يدل على
- (6) عيدان الطعام
- (7) يشبه
- (8) جنازة
- (9) ضيوف
- (10) يُكرم / يظهر الاحترام
- (11) حساسية
- (12) غذائي / متعلق بالنظام الغذائي
- (13) يناسب الجميع / حل واحد للجميع
- (14) امتنان / شكر

Remember, manners aren't **one-size-fits-all**⁽¹³⁾. What's polite in one place can be out of place in another. The key is to be curious, ask polite questions, and show **gratitude**⁽¹⁴⁾. In the end, good manners and good food go hand in hand: both bring people together and turn a meal into a memory.



Listening



Last winter, I learned how to cook **dumplings** for the first time when I visited my mother. She told me that cooking dumplings was a family **tradition**, and she said that a simple **recipe** could **bring** people **together**. I was excited because she also explained that dumplings often **represent** **luck** and **happiness** in many cultures.

First, my mother **mixed** flour and water to make the dough and **reminded** me that **patience** is important when cooking. She said that I should take my time and enjoy the **process**. Next, we **prospered** that filling using vegetables chicken, and **spices**. She told me that fresh **ingredients** always make that food **taste** better.

After that, she **rolled** the dough into small circles and showed me how to place **spoon** of filling inside each one. Then we **steamed** them until they became soft and warm. When I tasted them, I said they were the best dumplings I had ever eaten.

Now, I enjoy cooking dumplings on my own. I believe that homemade food creates memories, save money, and connects families in a special way.





Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

SB R 3

SB R 3

1. My brother has a horrible from dust.

a. taste	b. habit	c. allergy	d. likeness
----------	----------	------------	-------------
2. I feel deep for all the help you gave me.

a. gratitude	b. anger	c. worry	d. sadness
--------------	----------	----------	------------
3. The same thing for everyone, without changes or differences means

a. heavy	b. tiny	c. one-size-fits-all	d. unique
----------	---------	----------------------	-----------
4. The feeling of being thankful or showing appreciation is called

a. gratitude	b. anger	c. fear	d. laziness
--------------	----------	---------	-------------
5. The chef covered the pot so the vegetables could cook in

a. steam	b. dough	c. filling	d. slurping
----------	----------	------------	-------------
6. If you have health problems, you should follow a strict plan.

a. gratitude	b. closeness	c. resemblance	d. dietary
--------------	--------------	----------------	------------
7. She sent a thank-you note to show her for the lovely gift.

a. dough	b. filling	c. gratitude	d. allergy
----------	------------	--------------	------------
8. It's important for children to learn proper at the dinner table.

a. funeral	b. table manners	c. dough	d. slurping
------------	------------------	----------	-------------
9. Wearing special clothes during festivals is a long-standing in many cultures.

a. tradition	b. filling	c. steam	d. dough
--------------	------------	----------	----------
10. The chocolate cake had a rich, creamy inside.

a. ceremony	b. dietary	c. filling	d. resemblance
-------------	------------	------------	----------------
11. Many children suffer from a nut

a. closeness	b. allergy	c. hospitality	d. tradition
--------------	------------	----------------	--------------
12. The villagers showed great to the travelers by offering food and shelter.

a. funeral	b. hospital	c. dough	d. hospitality
------------	-------------	----------	----------------
13. The little boy his father in both looks and behavior.

a. slurps	b. resembles	c. diets	d. steams
-----------	--------------	----------	-----------
14. We enjoyed a delicious cake made by my grandmother.

a. homemade	b. approach	c. filling	d. funeral
-------------	-------------	------------	------------
15. The restaurant served steamed filled with vegetables and meat.

a. gratitude	b. tradition	c. closeness	d. dumplings
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------
16. They developed a strong sense of after working together for many years.

a. dietary	b. closeness	c. funeral	d. homemade
------------	--------------	------------	-------------
17. In some cultures, your noodles is a sign of enjoying the meal.

a. slurping	b. steam	c. dough	d. gratitude
-------------	----------	----------	--------------
18. Hundreds of people attended the to pay their last respects.

a. homemade	b. closeness	c. funeral	d. dietary
-------------	--------------	------------	------------
19. Manners aren't; what's polite in one place may be rude in another.

a. one-size-fits-none	b. one-size-fits-all	c. one-shape-fits-all	d. single-size-for-all
-----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	------------------------
20. Good manners and good food go; they both bring people together.

a. neck and hand	b. hand out hand	c. leg in hand	d. hand in hand
------------------	------------------	----------------	-----------------

SB

SB

21. What's polite in one country can be in another. SB
 a. out of stock b. out of sight c. out of place d. out of light
 22. If you're unsure what to do, watch others and their lead. SB
 a. follow b. chase c. neglect d. suspect



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

23. The waiter is very and always makes sure guests feel welcome.
 a. curious b. respectful c. magical d. upright
 24. She was very when her friends helped her move to the new house.
 a. thankful b. unfamiliar c. unusual d. magical
 25. Old photographs often bring back from childhood.
 a. memorize b. guests c. noodles d. memories
 26. During the ceremony, the mayor came to the best volunteers.
 a. honor b. fry c. roll d. boil
 27. You should always be when trying new foods in a foreign country.
 a. magical b. curious c. upright d. tasty
 28. For the outdoor event, everyone brought something to eat for the
 a. steam b. picnic c. approach d. setting
 29. The author acted as a, telling the story's background to the audience.
 a. narrator b. host c. guest d. signal
 30. In some cultures, it's normal to use to eat certain dishes.
 a. noodles b. basil c. sticks d. chopsticks
 31. She the dough into circles before baking.
 a. damaged b. rolled c. poured d. broke
 32. A glowing sign at the entrance served as a clear for visitors.
 a. signal b. paper c. sound d. rope
 33. When cooking, you should always measure one of sugar.
 a. bowl b. tablespoon c. cloves d. pan
 34. He tried to the company's values through his speech.
 a. represent b. remove c. stir d. roll
 35. To prevent the soup from sticking, remember to it occasionally.
 a. roll b. stir c. spoil d. fry
 36. During dinner, we noticed the between how children and adults reacted to the food.
 a. differences b. memories c. setting d. approach
 37. Before adding oil, make sure to heat the properly.
 a. bin b. pin c. pan d. host
 38. The speaker's to difficult questions impressed everyone.
 a. reaction b. recreation c. host d. memories
 39. Meeting someone new in a foreign city can feel at first.
 a. respectful b. tasty c. thankful d. unfamiliar
 40. The teacher used a gentle when helping students understand a hard topic.
 a. approach b. setting c. magical d. signal

41. He always keeps a small amount of to keep the fireplace burning.
 a. magic b. pan c. host d. fuel
42. The restaurant's cozy made everyone feel comfortable.
 a. signal b. stick c. setting d. approach
43. The child was very about how the magician performed the trick.
 a. thankful b. respected c. curious d. magical
44. During the festival, the city displayed a bright to mark the celebration.
 a. host b. sign c. allergy d. approach
45. She gave her son to attend the school trip.
 a. reaction b. memories c. permission d. fuel
46. The teacher asked students to notice the between different cultures
 a. differences b. approach c. memories d. host
47. The waiter's towards customers made a great impression.
 a. upright b. magical c. respect d. curiosity
48. At the family reunion, the children shared stories about their favorite
 a. setting b. memories c. reaction d. approach
49. The host made every feel special and welcome during the dinner.
 a. narrator b. memory c. guest d. ghost
50. During the picnic, everyone enjoyed the peaceful of the park.
 a. host b. setting c. signal d. memory
51. She loved to the dough before cutting it into pieces.
 a. stick b. fry c. stir d. roll



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

52. It's polite to always gratitude after receiving a gift.
 a. create b. develop c. show d. ask
53. Don't money on things you don't really need.
 a. waste b. cook c. follow d. connect
54. Social events often help families and strengthen relationships.
 a. develop b. follow c. connect d. cook
55. the end, everyone agreed that the plan was fair.
 a. In b. At c. On d. Over
56. You are supposed submit your homework by Friday.
 a. for b. on c. with d. to
57. Add a tablespoon olive oil to the salad.
 a. of b. with c. for d. in
58. It's polite to the host when you are invited to someone's home.
 a. ruin b. kill c. hurt d. honor
59. Her smile was a clear sign her happiness.
 a. of b. for c. with d. on

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

60. She always shows respect to her teachers. The synonym of the word "respect" is
 a. honor b. esteem c. rudeness d. laziness e. hostility
61. These flowers do not look natural at all. The antonym of the word "natural" is
 a. artificial b. instinctive c. normal d. usual e. unnatural
62. The students were very respectful to their principal during the school assembly. The synonym of the word "respectful" is
 a. polite b. impolite c. rude d. considerate e. disrespectful
63. A lack of closeness leads to distance between people. The antonym of the word "closeness" is
 a. togetherness b. separation c. intimacy d. distance e. connection
64. The family showed great hospitality by welcoming all their guests warmly. The synonym of the word "hospitality" is
 a. hostility b. welcoming c. friendliness d. unfriendliness e. rudeness
65. The red traffic light signals to stop your car. The synonym of "signal" is
 a. indicate b. demonstrate c. hide d. obscure e. ignore
66. The boy resembles his father in looks and behavior. The synonym of the word "resemble" is
 a. look like b. be similar to c. differ d. contrast e. vary
67. Despite her gratitude, some people showed ingratitude toward her efforts. The antonym of the word "gratitude" is
 a. ingratitude b. appreciation c. thankfulness d. ungratefulness e. recognition
68. The curious child asked many questions about the stars. The synonym of the word "curious" is
 a. uninterested b. indifferent c. inquisitive d. interested e. lazy
69. Her gratitude was clear when she thanked everyone for their help. The synonym of the word "gratitude" is
 a. ungratefulness b. appreciation c. ingratitude d. disregard e. thankfulness



Reported Questions

السؤال في الغير مباشر

يوجد نوعان من السؤال (السؤال بفعل مساعد والسؤال باستخدام أداة استفهام) وللتحويل إلى غير مباشر كما يلي:

direct	indirect
said to	asked
said	wanted to know / wondered / inquired / asked

تُحذف **inverted commas** (علامات التنصيص) وتُستبدل علامة الاستفهام بنقطة

- ① ونستخدم **if** أو **whether** في السؤال بالفعل المساعد
- ② ونستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام كرابط في السؤال بأداة استفهام.
- ③ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الخبرية.
- ④ تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.
- ⑤ يتم تحويل صيغة السؤال إلى صيغة جملة خبرية. (لا يوجد صيغة سؤال في الغير مباشر)
- ⑥ تحول الظروف الزمنية والمكانية كما في الجملة الخبرية:

- ★ "Where do you live?" asked Huda. ⇨ **Huda asked me where I lived.**
- ★ "Why are you laughing?" Sami asked her. ⇨ **Sami asked her why she was laughing.**
- ★ "When will you be back?" asked their father.
⇨ **Their father asked them when they would be back.**

Important Notes

① إذا كانت إجابة السؤال **Yes / No** تستخدم **if / whether** فقط إذا وجدت **or**.

- ★ She said to me, "Do you speak English?" ⇨ **She asked me if I spoke English.**
- ★ He said, "Have you ever eaten pizza or not?"
⇨ **He wondered whether I had ever eaten pizza or not.**

② إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام مثل **How / Where / When** تستخدم نفس الأداة كأداة ربط:

- ★ He said, "Why are you crying?" ⇨ **He asked why I was crying.**

③ حذف الكلمات **(do / does / did)** عند تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر في **(does / do)** يحول الفعل إلى الماضي البسيط و**(did)** يتحول الفعل إلى الماضي التام.

- ★ Jana said to Toka, "How did you go to work?"
⇨ **Jana asked Toka how she had gone to work.**
- ★ Jana said to Toka, "When does she watch TV?"
⇨ **Jana asked Toka when she watched TV.**

④ لا تتغير الأزمنة في بعض التحويلات كما في الجملة الخبرية:

- ★ Mr Ahmed asked just now, "Where is the club?"
⇨ **Mr Ahmed asked just now where the club is.**

⑤ لاحظ استخدام بعض الأفعال في الغير مباشر:

★ He said, "Shall I help you to cross the road?" ⇨ He offered to help me cross the road.	في حالة العرض (offer)
★ She said, "Could you lend me your dictionary, please?" ⇨ She asked me to lend her my dictionary.	في حالة الطلب (request)
★ He said, "Would you like to come to my birthday party?" ⇨ He invited me to his birthday party.	في حالة الدعوة (invitation)

★ He said, "Why didn't you study hard?"

❖ He **blamed me for not studying hard.**

في حالة اللوم

① إذا جاءت أداة الاستفهام بعد صيغ الطلب تعامل كجملة وليست سؤال مثل :

★ Can you tell me **where the club is?**

★ Do you know **where Toka went?**

② بعض أفعال القول لا يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل :

wanted to know / wondered / inquired

★ Hani **wanted to know** if he could go.

★ Mona **inquired** where the book was.

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice

الجملة الأمرية والاقتراح والنصيحة في الغير مباشر

❖ هي الجملة التي تبدأ بفعل في المصدر في الإثبات مثل "Open this door."

❖ أو بـ **don't** في حالة النفي مثل "Don't waste your time."

الجملة الأمرية

❖ وللتحويل إلى كلام غير مباشر كما يلي :

① تحويل فعل القول كما يلي :

direct

indirect

said to

complained - warned - ordered - asked - told - advised

② نحدد **inverted commas** (علامات التنصيص) ونستخدم :

في الأمر المثبت نستخدم (الصدر + to)

★ Ali said to his son "Study hard."

❖ Ali **advised** (told - asked) **his son to study hard.**

في الأمر المنفي نستخدم (الصدر + not to)

★ Seif said to Jana "Don't make noise."

❖ Seif **advised** (told) **Jana not to** make noise.

③ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الخبرية.

④ تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما في الجملة الخبرية.

⑤ تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.

① في حالة استخدام **suggest / recommend**

suggest / recommend + v + ing

suggest / recommend that + فاعل +

inf

should + inf

لاحظ
الاختلاف بين

★ He said, "Let's go for a walk."

❖ He **suggested going** for a walk.

❖ He **suggested that we go** for a walk.

❖ He **suggested that we should go** for a walk.

② في حالة استخدام **deny / admit**

deny / admit + v + ing

★ He said, "I didn't steal any money."

❖ He **denied** stealing any money.

★ She said, "I did this crime."

❖ She **admitted** doing that crime.

٢ في حالة استخدام **advised**:**advised someone to / not to + inf.**

★ He said to me, "You'd better sleep early."

❖ He **advised** me **to** sleep early.٣ استخدام **apologized** في حالة الاعتذار:**apologized for + v + ing**

★ He said, "I am sorry I don't have money."

❖ He **apologized for** not having money.٥ في حالة استخدام **promised**:**promised to + inf. / promised that + clause**

★ He said, "I'll buy you a gift."

❖ He **promised to** buy me a gift.❖ He **promised** that he **would** buy me a gift.٦ استخدام **refused** بدلاً من **said**:**refused to + inf.**

★ He said to Adel, "I won't give you any money."

❖ He **refused to** give Adel any money.٧ استخدام **decided** بدلاً من **said**:**decided to + inf.**

★ He said, "I've made up my mind to give up smoking"

❖ He **decided to** give up smoking.٨ استخدام **warned** بدلاً من **said**:**warned someone not to + inf. → warned someone against + v + ing**

★ He said to me, "Don't cross the road."

❖ He **warned** me **not to** cross the road.❖ He **warned** me **against** crossing the road.٩ استخدام **insisted** بدلاً من **said**:**insisted on + v + ing**

★ He said, "I will leave now."

❖ He **insisted on** **leaving** then.

لاحظ
استخدام
الأفعال
في الغير مباشر



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. She asked me if I the news about the painted murals. SB R3
 a. had heard b. have heard c. hear d. am hearing
2. They asked where the previous summer. SB R3
 a. did we go b. we had gone c. we went d. are we going
3. Hatim asked or not we would join the trip to the zoo. شبرا ٢٠٢٢ دمياط ٢٠٢٢ أبو تشت ٢٠٢٢
 a. if b. when c. whether d. how
4. I wondered where the night before. أشمون ٢٠٢٢
 a. he had gone b. did he go c. he would go d. was he going
5. Yasser me why I had been to Cairo the day before. غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٢
 a. asked b. wanted to know c. ordered d. inquired
6. I asked Hazem when منفلوط ٢٠٢٢
 a. his birthday was b. his birthday is c. is his birthday d. was his birthday
7. I Ali what he was reading. الفرهه ٢٠٢٢
 a. wondered b. asked c. inquired d. said to
8. He asked his son why late the previous day. الباجور ٢٠٢٢
 a. he has come b. he had come c. had he come d. has he come
9. Sherif his dad to give him a lift to school because he was late. شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
 a. asked b. questioned c. said d. wondered
10. My friend Ali asked why late for the meeting. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
 a. have I been b. I had been c. I have been d. had I been
11. He asked me his son had passed the exam. الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢ فاقوس ٢٠٢٢ منية النصر ٢٠٢٢ ملوى ٢٠٢٢
 a. whether b. weather c. that d. to
12. She asked him what doing on holiday. قليوب ٢٠٢٢
 a. did he like b. he liked c. he do like d. did you like
13. He asked me if I knew that his sister ill. أخميم ٢٠٢٢
 a. is b. had been c. has been d. will be
14. Helen asked me if I at the party the next day. الصالحية ٢٠٢٢
 a. will be b. would be c. am d. was
15. My son asked he could leave early. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
 a. that b. if c. to d. weather
16. I asked Mahmoud what then. القوصية ٢٠٢٢
 a. he was doing b. he is doing c. was he doing d. is he doing
17. The teacher asked me قوص ٢٠٢٢
 a. how I was. b. how was I. c. how are you. d. how was I?
18. Rana asked Fatma if that their friend Alaa had been ill. دير بن نجم ٢٠٢٢
 a. does she know b. she knew c. did she know d. she knows
19. Mai asked me where the following month. نقادة ٢٠٢٢
 a. I had traveled b. would I travel c. I would travel d. had I traveled

20. The tour guide asked the tourist he came from.

- a. when b. where c. that d. if

21. Gamal inquired or not we would join the trip to the Grand Egyptian Museum. LM

- a. unless b. when c. whether d. how

22. I advise my son hard for his coming exams. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

- a. to study b. studied c. studies d. studying

23. The teacher said, "Where , Seif?"

- a. your book is b. your books were c. the books are d. is your book

24. "Where did you buy this jacket?" he asked me. Which is the correct reported speech? SB

- a. He asked me where I buy that jacket.
b. He asked me where did I buy that jacket.
c. He asked me where I had bought that jacket.
d. He asked me where I have bought that jacket.

25. Sama said, "Will you leave for Aswan tomorrow?" Choose the correct reported question: SB

- a. Sama said if I will leave for Aswan tomorrow.
b. Sama asked whether I would leave for Aswan the following day.
c. Sama told if I leave for Aswan the next day.
d. Sama asked that I will leave for Aswan tomorrow.

26. "Do you enjoy swimming?" said Zeinab. Choose the correct reported question SB

- a. Zeinab said if I enjoy swimming. b. Zeinab asked if I enjoyed swimming.
c. Zeinab told me do I enjoy swimming. d. Zeinab asked that I enjoy swimming.



Exercise Ph Language Level 2

27. We that Ahmed go in his car. دكرنس ٢٠٢٢

- a. suggested b. advised c. said d. wondered

28. Ahmed that the service in that restaurant was not good. روض الفرج ٢٠٢٢

- a. complained b. advised c. told d. offered

29. She recommended that we the next weekend in Alexandria. غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٢

- a. spending b. spend c. to send d. was sending

30. Ali said, "If I were you, I would read this book." This means that Ali me to read that book. غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

- a. let b. advised c. ordered d. discouraged

31. She asked me if I had seen film before. طامية ٢٠٢٢

- a. this b. these c. that d. those

32. The teacher suggested that he exercise again. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

- a. we do b. we are doing c. doing d. did we

33. Mohammed denied the mirror of the car. ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٢

- a. breaks b. broke c. to break d. breaking

34. The criminal admitted the woman on purpose. المعجمي ٢٠٢٢

- a. kill b. killing c. killed d. kills

35. No one knows why angry. LM

- a. was she b. is she c. she had been d. she is

36. The expert that pesticides could be poisonous.
 a. explained b. told c. promised d. asked
37. He that he would visit me.
 a. wanted to know b. told c. asked d. promised
38. Our parents us not to eat food after its expiry date.
 a. said b. explained c. were told d. warned
39. Omnia that she had a headache.
 a. complained b. told c. asked d. warned
40. Toka going shopping at the new Fairfax centre.
 a. demanded b. warned c. promised d. suggested
41. Hani promised me his mobile.
 a. to lend b. to lending c. lending d. lend
42. I suggested that he wait for us till we return.
 a. will b. can c. should d. shall
43. The criminal that he killed his neighbour deliberately.
 a. promised b. suggested c. threatened d. admitted
44. Another student why he is getting bad marks.
 a. told b. wanted to know c. wants to know d. asked
45. They wanted to know music.
 a. if I played b. did I play c. do I play d. that I play
46. The teacher asked why so many students were absent
 a. that day b. the following day c. this day d. the day before
47. 'Don't park here.' - The policeman said we park there.
 a. should b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. must
48. The officer the soldiers to fire at the terrorist.
 a. ordered b. begged c. said d. inquired
49. My teacher recommended the lesson again.
 a. to revise b. revising c. revise d. that revise
50. Mother asked me my room.
 a. whether to tidy b. tidy c. to tidy d. don't tidy
51. Adel wonders when I back home as he needs my help urgently.
 a. had been b. am being c. would be d. will be
52. He wanted to know Sara had been.
 a. weather b. if c. where d. why



Exercise Ph

Language Level 3

53. I him what I was planning to do the following day.
 a. said b. wondered c. told d. asked
 أشمون ٢٠٢٢
54. Adham his father watched the match with his friends.
 a. told b. promised c. asked d. said
 العياط ٢٠٢٢
55. She me why she had visited her aunt the day before.
 a. begged b. told c. said d. asked
 ميت غمر ٢٠٢٢ بنها ٢٠٢٢

56. He whether the mobile phone was cheap or not, he'd buy it.

- a. advised b. asked c. said d. inquired

57. Tony if he had had more free time, he would have joined a club.

- a. asked b. said c. wondered d. advised

58. Kamal said to her, "Did you accept the new post last week?"

The correct reported sentence is:

- a. Kamal asked her if he had accepted the new post the week before.
b. Kamal asked her if she had accepted the new post the week before.
c. Kamal asked her if she has accepted the new post the week before.
d. Kamal asked her if she had accepted the new post the next week.

59. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

- a. Rami asked me when I would come back from Rome.
b. Dalia said, "Which hobby would you like to do during the summer holiday?"
c. Leila said me that she was going to attend that important conference.
d. Hatim asked me what my favourite hobbies were.

60. Which of the following isn't reported speech?

- a. My uncle said he was worried about his younger son.
b. I wasn't told about the time of the meeting.
c. Tamer inquired when I'd be able to visit him.
d. Hadeer wanted to know which dress I was going to wear during the wedding party.

61. Which of the following isn't structurally correct?

- a. Hala asked me which jacket appealed to me.
b. Basim wondered why had I been so late for the party.
c. Taher said the match was exciting.
d. I wonder when the new factory will be built.

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- "Where did you buy this camera?" my friend asked. (My friend asked me where...) SB
- "Are you coming to the party?" he asked. (if)
- "Did you watch the match yesterday?" he asked. (whether)
- "Have you finished your homework?" the teacher said. (had finished)
- "Don't touch the snake," Nawal said to Ola. (warned)
- Sara asked how I had solved the problem. ("How ...?")
- "How much money have you saved this year?" Leila inquired. (inquired how)
- I wanted to know if the students must finish the test in one hour. ("Must...?")
- The manager asked if I could attend the meeting. ("Can ...?")
- "Who is knocking at the door?" my mother asked. (was)
- The teacher asked, "Why are you late today?" (that day)
- "What are you doing now?" she asked me. (She asked...)



Skills

Unit

11

الجزء الثالث
المهارات

Part 3

A recipe blog

مدونة وصفات الطهي

- ★ A recipe blog is a website or online page where someone shares how to cook different dishes.

❖ مدونة وصفات الطهي هي موقع إلكتروني أو صفحة على الإنترنت حيث يشارك شخص ما طريقة طهي أطباق مختلفة.

- ★ It usually includes a short story, a list of ingredients, step-by-step instructions, and sometimes pictures or cooking tips.

❖ عادةً ما تتضمن قصة قصيرة، قائمة بالمقادير، تعليمات خطوة بخطوة، وأحياناً صور أو نصائح للطبخ.

A Great Recipe Blog



- 1) **Start with a catchy title:** Make readers curious!

❖ ابدأ بعنوان جذاب: اجعل القراء فضوليين!

- ★ e.g., Grandma's Secret Apple Pie

- 2) **Add a short introduction:**

Tell a short story why you love this recipe or where it came from.

❖ أضف مقدمة قصيرة: اذكر قصة قصيرة عن سبب حبك لهذه الوصفة أو من أين جاءت.

- ★ e.g., "I learned this dish from my dad. We always cook it on weekends."

- 3) **List ingredients clearly**

Write them in order, and include measurements.

❖ اكتب المكونات بوضوح: اكتبها بالترتيب، وتضمن المقادير.

- ★ e.g., 2 cups of flour, 3 eggs

- 4) **Give clear, step-by-step instructions**

Use sequencing words like first, next, then, after that, finally.

❖ اعط تعليمات واضحة خطوة بخطوة

استخدم كلمات الترتيب مثل: أولاً، بعد ذلك، ثم، بعد ذلك، أخيراً.

- ★ e.g., First, chop the vegetables. Then, heat the oil in a pan.

- 5) **Use cooking verbs and action words**

Make your writing active and clear.

❖ استخدم أفعال الطبخ وكلمات الحركة: اجعل كتابتك نشطة وواضحة.

- ★ e.g., mix, stir, add, bake, boil, slice, serve

- 6) **Write like you're talking to a friend**

Be friendly and personal. Food blogs should sound warm, not like a cookbook.

❖ اكتب وكأنك تتحدث مع صديق: كن ودوداً وشخصياً. يجب أن تبدو مدونات الطعام دافئة، وليست مثل كتاب طبخ.

- ★ e.g., Don't forget to taste the sauce, it's the best part!

7) Add culture or emotion

Explain when people eat it in your country or who taught you.

أضف ثقافة أو شعور : اشرح متى يأكل الناس هذا الطبق في بلدك أو من علمك إياه.

- ★ e.g., This soup reminds me of winter evenings with my grandmother.

8) Include a photo or a short tip

Show what the dish looks like or share a cooking secret.

أضف صورة أو نصيحة قصيرة : أظهر شكل الطبق أو شارك سرًا من أسرار الطبخ.

- ★ e.g., Tip: Add lemon juice at the end for a fresh taste.

9) End with an invitation

Encourage readers to try the recipe and share their results.

أختم بدعوة : شجع القراء على تجربة الوصفة ومشاركة نتائجهم.

- ★ e.g., "Try it at home and tell me how it goes in the comments!"



Exercise

Writing

- The main purpose of a recipe blog is to
 a. tell a long story b. explain how to cook a dish
 c. advertise a restaurant d. describe a place
- The blog is written in a/an tone.
 a. formal b. academic c. scientific d. personal
- A good recipe blog usually includes all the following EXCEPT
 a. long arguments b. personal story c. ingredients list d. instructions
- The list of ingredients should be written
 a. without order b. with measurements
 c. as a paragraph d. after the conclusion
- Words like first, next, finally are used to show
 a. opinion b. description c. sequencing d. emotion
- Which verb is mainly used in cooking instructions?
 a. chop b. imagine c. decide d. believe
- The sentence "Cooking brings my family together" mainly shows
 a. measurement b. warning
 c. instruction d. culture and emotion
- The instruction "Boil water and cook the spaghetti until soft" is an example of
 a. opinion b. instruction c. introduction d. conclusion
- The best place to state why you like the dish is in the
 a. ingredients list b. introduction c. instructions d. conclusion
- A recipe blog is usually found on a
 a. textbook b. dictionary c. exam paper d. website
- The main function of the title in a recipe blog is to
 a. attract readers b. explain steps c. give advice d. list ingredients

12. Adding a photo in a recipe blog helps readers
 - a. skip the instructions
 - b. see what the dish looks like
 - c. learn grammar
 - d. avoid cooking
13. The conclusion of a recipe blog usually
 - a. gives new ingredients
 - b. repeats the steps
 - c. invites readers to try the recipe
 - d. explains measurements
14. A short cooking tip is usually added to make the blog more
 - a. formal
 - b. boring
 - c. strict
 - d. helpful
15. Culture or emotion in a recipe blog is usually shown by
 - a. personal memories
 - b. instructions
 - c. conclusion
 - d. measurements
16. A recipe blog shares how to different dishes.
 - a. cook
 - b. buy
 - c. sell
 - d. order
17. Cooking tips give helpful to the reader.
 - a. problems
 - b. secrets
 - c. advice
 - d. stories
18. A catchy title should make readers
 - a. bored
 - b. sleepy
 - c. angry
 - d. curious
19. Ingredients should be written in the correct
 - a. color
 - b. order
 - c. size
 - d. shape
20. Cooking verbs make writing more
 - a. active
 - b. boring
 - c. slow
 - d. difficult
21. A recipe blog should sound like talking to a
 - a. teacher
 - b. judge
 - c. friend
 - d. boss



A Vocabulary & Structure

- Ali decided to his jacket for a lighter one.
a. feature b. season c. swap d. comfort
- Amira tried a new made with yogurt.
a. dip b. aisle c. curiosity d. flavor
- I'd like to know he lives.
a. what b. about c. where d. when
- The doctor told Omar he had a/an and must avoid spices.
a. allergy b. dough c. funeral d. gratitude

B Translation

- It's important to learn from your mistakes to succeed in life. This will make people appreciate your success.

أ. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتتجنب في الحياة، فهذا سوف يجعل الناس يقدرون نجاحك
 ب. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتتجنب في الحياة، هذا قد يجعل الناس يقدرون نجاحك
 ج. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتتجنب في الحياة، فهذا سوف يجعل الناس يقدرون نجاحك
 د. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتتجنب في الحياة، فهذا سوف يجعل الناس يقرون نجاحك

C Writing

Write your recipe blog of about (150) words about.

"How to cook your favorite meal"



Exercise 04

Translation

- Through education, we can acquire the necessary knowledge, skills and values. It also helps us to become beneficial members to our society.

شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤

أ. من خلال التعليم، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم الضرورية كما أنه يساعدنا على أن تأتي بأعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.
 ب. من خلال التعليم، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم الضرورية كما أنه يساعدنا على أن نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.
 ج. من خلال التدريس يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم اللازمة كما أنه يساعدنا على أن نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.
 د. من خلال التعليم، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم الضرورية كما أنه يساعدنا على أن نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.

- Charities play an important role in providing help and support for the poor and the needy, so we should boost them financially and with our efforts.

أطفيح ٢٠٢٤

أ. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دورا هاما في تقديم الدعم والمساعدة للفقراء والحاجة ولذلك يجب أن ندعمها ماليا وبمجهوداتنا.
 ب. تلعب المؤسسات الدولية دورا هاما في تقديم الدعم والمساعدة للفقراء والحاجة ولذلك يجب أن ندعمها ماليا وبمجهوداتنا
 ج. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دورا هاما في تقديم الدعم والمساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين ولذلك يجب أن ندعمها ماليا وبمجهوداتنا
 د. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دورا لا ينكر في تقديم الدعم والمساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين ولذلك يجب أن ندعمها ماديا وبمجهوداتنا

٢. مصر في حاجة الي جهود العلماء والمبدعين وأهل الفكر لاتخاذ خطوات ايجابية لتحقيق التنمية.

منوف ٢٠٢٤

- Egypt is in need of trials of scientists, creative and thinkers to take passive steps to do development.
- Egypt is in need to efforts of science, creative and thinkers to make positive steps to recognize development.
- Egypt is in need of efforts of scientists, creativity and thinkers to do positive steps to achieve development.
- Egypt is in need of the efforts of scientists, creators and thinkers to take positive steps to achieve development.



General Exercises on

Unit 11



A

Vocabulary and Structure

1) Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- He gave a respectful bow before entering the room. The antonym of the word "respectful" is
a. polite b. disrespectful c. rude d. considerate e. friendly
- The company has a global presence in many countries. The synonym of the word "global" is
a. international b. regional c. local d. worldwide e. domestic

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The supermarket has a long between the shelves.
a. island b. dip c. bowl d. aisle
- If two people don't want their seats, they can them.
a. adjust b. swap c. mix d. combine
- Be careful with this hot sauce; it's very
a. fiery b. refreshing c. fast d. adjustable
- A ceremony held when someone dies is called a
a. funeral b. wedding c. party d. festival
- This jacket is designed to be, so it should fit everyone.
a. filling b. one-size-fits-all c. resemblance d. hospitality
- Saying "thank you" is an example of
a. anger b. sadness c. fear d. gratitude
- Fadi me why I had sold my car.
a. inquired b. inquires c. asked d. asks
- Sama asked the tourist where
a. he lives b. did he live c. he has lived d. he lived
- The teacher asked if the students the rule.
a. understand b. understood c. have understood d. will understand
- Sara asked me where I the book the week before.
a. buy b. bought c. had bought d. have bought
- A catchy title is one that is
a. attractive b. boring c. difficult d. long
- If someone wants to learn how a dish is prepared step by step through an online page, they should visit a
a. travel blog b. news website c. food market d. recipe blog

3) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many teenagers today spend a lot of time online. Some people believe that this habit is harmful, while others think it can be useful if used wisely. The internet allows students to find information quickly, communicate with others, and learn new skills. For example, a student can watch educational videos, read articles, or join online courses that help improve school performance.

However, spending too much time online can cause problems. Some students become less active and prefer sitting in front of screens instead of playing sports or meeting friends. This may affect their health and social skills. In addition, not all information on the internet is **reliable**, so students must be careful about what they read or believe.

Experts say that balance is the key. Using the internet for learning and communication can be very helpful, but it should not replace real-life activities. Parents and teachers play an

important role in guiding students to use the internet in a positive way. If students learn how to manage their time well, the internet can be a powerful tool for success.

- What is the main idea of the passage?
a. Teenagers should stop using the internet b. The internet is dangerous for students
c. The internet has both benefits and problems d. Students only use the internet for fun
- Which activity is mentioned as a useful way to learn online?
a. Playing online games b. Watching educational videos
c. Chatting with friends d. Shopping online
- Which sentence best summarizes the passage?
a. The internet is bad for teenagers b. Teenagers spend all their time online
c. The internet should be banned in schools d. Using the internet wisely is important
- Why can spending too much time online be a problem?
a. It makes students smarter b. It improves communication skills
c. It can affect health and social life d. It helps students relax
- What can we predict if students do not manage their time well?
a. They will become more active b. They may face health or social problems
c. They will study better d. They will stop using the internet
- How does the writer compare online activities with real-life activities?
a. Online activities are more important b. Real-life activities are useless
c. Both should be balanced d. Online activities should replace real life
- The word "reliable" in the passage most nearly means
a. true and trusted b. interesting c. modern d. popular



Translation

- Food is more than just a way to satisfy hunger; it reflects the culture of a country. Every nation has traditional dishes that tell stories about its history, climate, and lifestyle.

- أ. الطعام مجرد وسيلة لإشباع الجوع ولا يعكس أي شيء عن ثقافة البلد. كل دولة لها أطباق تقليدية تحكي قصصا عن تاريخها ومناخها وأسلوب حياتها.
- ب. الطعام أكثر من مجرد وسيلة لإشباع الجوع؛ فهو يعكس ثقافة أي بلد. كل دولة لها أطباق تقليدية تحكي قصصا عن تاريخها ومناخها وأسلوب حياتها.
- ج. كل بلد لديه أطباق تقليدية لكن لا تعكس أي شيء عن تاريخه أو أسلوب حياته. كل دولة لها أطباق حديثة تحكي قصصا عن تاريخها ومناخها وأسلوب حياتها.
- د. الطعام يعكس فقط تاريخ البلد وليس أسلوب حياته أو تقاليده. كل دولة لها أطباق غير تقليدية تحكي قصصا عن تاريخها ومناخها وأسلوب حياتها.

٢. ممارسة الرياضة بانتظام تحسن الصحة البدنية والعقلية، وتقلل من خطر الأمراض المزمنة.

- Exercising regularly worsens physical and mental health, and increases the risk of chronic diseases.
- Exercising regularly has no effect on physical or mental health, and does not influence the risk of chronic diseases.
- Exercising regularly improves physical and mental health, and reduces the risk of chronic diseases.
- Exercising regularly slightly harms physical health but improves mental health.

4) Answer the following questions:

- What lesson did the boy learn about patience?
- What did the dream mean for Santiago?

5) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

- "You must submit your assignment before Friday," the teacher said. (told me to)
- Father said, "What are you doing now?" (Father inquired)

6) Write ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on: " Food And Culture"

**1) Complete the following dialogue:**

- Customer** I want to buy a new mobile
Assistant Can I help you?
Customer Yes, ①
Assistant Do you want a smart one or an ordinary one?
Customer ②
Assistant OK, here you are.
Customer ③?
Assistant It is 5000 L.E. It's smart as you asked.
Customer ④?
Assistant Yes, there is. You can pay 4900 L.E.
Customer Thank you. I'll take it.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A community is people who live in a place or an area and have common interests. A community can be as small as a group of people who live on the same street, or it can be as large as a group of people who live in the same city. The person who lives in a community is a member of it. Members should support their community.

There are many ways to support our community. We can donate money and food to charities. Charities collect and give them to the people who don't have enough to pay their needs. Another way is by donating blood.

It can save the life of people with long-term illnesses. It also has many health benefits. If we donate blood, we can renew our blood cells and help our body to produce more of it. Blood donation should be done as a voluntary work and done for free. There is no substitute for human blood. All transfusions use blood from a donor.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
.....
- To whom we should donate money?
.....
- How does blood donation have health benefits?
.....

B) Choose the right answer:

- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
 a. communities b. only money c. only food d. money and food
- Someone, who can give blood to another, is called a
 a. member b. donor c. done d. donation

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

B. Translate into English:

الإيمان بالقضاء والقدر لا يتعارض مع مفهوم الإرادة الحرة



Unit 12

People and Places

Learning Outcomes

Reading

language

Listening

Writing

Speaking

- Read short texts and conversations about famous landmarks.
- Identify main ideas and specific details about places and people.
- Use modal verbs of possibility (must, can't, and might) correctly in sentences.
- Identify specific details in audio scripts about landmarks, journeys, and city life.
- Recognize comparative and superlative forms used to describe experiences and places.
- Write a paragraph about a city or a place, comparing it with another place.
- Write a short travel journal entry describing a trip, using descriptive adjectives.
- Create a one-day tour plan for tourists in their governorate.
- Compare places and experiences using comparative and superlative adjectives.

Unit 12

People and Places

Lessons

- 1 Famous Landmarks in Egypt
- 2 Travelers' Stories



Key Vocabulary

entire ^(adj)	كامل / بأكمله	float ^(v)	يطفو	masterpiece ⁽ⁿ⁾	تحفة فنية / عمل رائع
landmark ⁽ⁿ⁾	معلم / علامة مميزة	stunning ^(adj)	مذهل / رائع جداً	ceremony ⁽ⁿ⁾	مراسم / احتفال رسمي
half-worn ^(adj)	نصف مستهلك / مستعمل جزئياً	rituals ⁽ⁿ⁾	طقوس / مراسم متكررة	impressive ^(adj)	مثير للإعجاب / رائع
align ^(n/v)	يُحاذاي / يصطف / اصطفاف	urban ^(adj)	حضري	architect ⁽ⁿ⁾	مهندس معماري
stretch ^(n/v)	يمتد / امتداد	visionary ^(n/adj)	صاحب رؤية	architecture ⁽ⁿ⁾	عمارة / هندسة معمارية
glowing ^(adj)	متوهج / مشرق	religious ^(adj)	ديني / متعلق بالدين	resilience ⁽ⁿ⁾	مرونة / تحمل
whisper ^(n/v)	يهمس / همسة	hieroglyphs ⁽ⁿ⁾	كتابات مصرية قديمة	astronomy ⁽ⁿ⁾	علم الفلك

Main Vocabulary

coast ⁽ⁿ⁾	ساحل	vision ⁽ⁿ⁾	رؤية	recognize ^(v)	يتعرف على / يميز
coastline ⁽ⁿ⁾	خط الساحل	spirit ⁽ⁿ⁾	روح / معنويات	combine ^(v)	يدمج / يجمع
shape ^(n/v)	شكل / يشكل	extremely ^(adv)	جداً / للغاية	pattern ⁽ⁿ⁾	نمط / شكل متكرر
position ⁽ⁿ⁾	موقع / وضعية	rhythm ⁽ⁿ⁾	إيقاع	beauty ⁽ⁿ⁾	جمال
tomb ⁽ⁿ⁾	قبر / مقبرة	scale ⁽ⁿ⁾	نطاق / حجم	faith ⁽ⁿ⁾	إيمان / عقيدة
symbol ⁽ⁿ⁾	رمز	temple ⁽ⁿ⁾	معبد	wisdom ⁽ⁿ⁾	حكمة
mystery ⁽ⁿ⁾	لغز / سر	detailed ^(adj)	ملي بالتفاصيل	mud-brick ⁽ⁿ⁾	طوب طيني
massive ^(adj)	ضخم / هائل	visible ^(adj)	مرئي	blend ^(n/v)	يمزج / مزج
enormous ^(adj)	ضخم جداً / هائل	landscape ⁽ⁿ⁾	منظر طبيعي	shining ^(adj)	متألّق
column ⁽ⁿ⁾	عمود	restore ^(v)	يرمم / يستعيد	castle ⁽ⁿ⁾	قلعة
surface ⁽ⁿ⁾	سطح	atmosphere ⁽ⁿ⁾	أجواء / الغلاف الجوي	extend ^(v)	يمتد / يوسع
remarkable ^(adj)	جدير بالملاحظة / رائع	sinking ^(adj)	غارق	echo ^(n/v)	صدى / يصدى
knowledge ⁽ⁿ⁾	معرفة / علم	memorable ^(adj)	لا ينسى	used up	مستنفذ / مستهلك
citadel ⁽ⁿ⁾	قلعة / حصن	warmth ⁽ⁿ⁾	دفء / حرارة	attract ^(v)	يجذب
reminders ⁽ⁿ⁾	تذكيرات	carving ⁽ⁿ⁾	نقش / ينقش	genius ^(adj)	عبقريّة / نابغة
strength ⁽ⁿ⁾	قوة / متانة	imaginative ^(adj)	خيالي / مبدع	scenery ⁽ⁿ⁾	مناظر طبيعية
layout ⁽ⁿ⁾	تخطيط / ترتيب	intelligent ^(adj)	ذكي	tour guide ⁽ⁿ⁾	مرشد سياحي

Collocations

plan entire trips	يخطط رحلات كاملة	create a tour	يُنظّم جولة سياحية
tell stories	يحكي قصصاً	bring history to life	يجعل التاريخ ينبض بالحياة
create a masterpiece	يُبدع تحفة فنية	arrange things	يُرتب أشياء
make a trip memorable	يجعل الرحلة لا تنسى	describe experiences	يصف تجارب
feel at home	يشعر بالراحة وكأنه في بيته	plan trips around	يُنظّم رحلات حول

Expressions & Prepositions

feel the spirit of	يشعر بروح	used up	مستهلك
restored section	جزء مرمم / قسم تم ترميمه	side by side	جنباً إلى جنب
weathered stone	حجر متآكل بفعل العوامل الجوية	famous for	مشهور بـ / معروف بـ
float on the Nile	يطفو على نهر النيل	a reminder of	تذكير بـ
surprise visitors with	يفاجئ الزوار بـ	compared to	مقارنة بـ

blend with	يندمج مع / يمزج مع	suitable for	مناسب لـ
cable car	تلفريك	on the coast	على الساحل
in the desert	في الصحراء	a one-day tour	جولة ليوم واحد
can't help but wonder	لا يسعك إلا أن تتساءل	through the walls	عبر الجدران
with a deep respect for	مع احترام عميق لـ	sound and light show	عرض الصوت والضوء

Famous Egyptian Places and Landmarks		أماكن ومعالِم مصر الشهيرة	
the New Valley	الوادي الجديد	the Citadel of Salah El-Din	قلعة صلاح الدين الأيوبي
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	the Great Pyramid	الهرم الأكبر
the Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية	the Citadel of Qaitbay	قلعة قايتباي
the Temple of Karnak	معبد الكرنك	the sphinx	أبو الهول
Philae temple ⁽ⁿ⁾	معبد فيلة		

Definitions

float	يطفو / يبقى على سطح الماء	to stay on the surface of water without sinking
worn	متآكل / مستهلك	partly damaged or used up over time
glowing	متوهج / مضيء	shining softly with light or warmth
landmarks	معالِم / أماكن مشهورة	famous or important places that are easy to recognize
whisper	يهمس	to speak very quietly so only a few people can hear
entire	كامل / كل شيء	whole; all of something
stretch	يمتد / يمدد	extends or continues over a large area or distance
visionary	ذو رؤية مستقبلية / متخيل	a person with imaginative and intelligent ideas about the future
carvings	نقوش / منحوتات	shapes, patterns, or pictures cut into wood, stone, or another material
rituals	طقوس / مراسم تقليدية أو دينية	special actions or ceremonies done in a traditional or religious way
stunning	مذهل / رائع / خلّاب	extremely beautiful or impressive
urban	حضري / متعلق بالمدينة	related to a city or town
align	يرتب / يصطف	to place or arrange things in a straight line or correct position; to match or fit well

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
landmark	معلم مشهور	monument, attraction, site	insignificant place, unknown spot
ancient	قديم	old, historic, antique	modern, new, recent
massive	ضخم	huge, enormous, gigantic	small, tiny, light
remarkable	رائع / مذهل	amazing, extraordinary, outstanding	ordinary, common, usual
proudly	بفخر	confidently, honorably, boldly	humbly, shyly, modestly
silently	بصمت	quietly, softly, soundlessly	loudly, noisily, openly
glowing	متوهج	shining, bright, radiant	dim, dark, dull
carvings	نقوش / منحوتات	engravings, sculptures, etchings	
rituals	طقوس	ceremonies, traditions, customs	casual acts, random acts, irregularity
urban	حضري	city, civic, city, metropolitan	rural, village, countryside
spirit	روح	soul, essence, energy	body, material, lifelessness
visible	مرئى	obvious, seen, clear, noticeable	secret, concealed, unseen, hidden

Unit 12



Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
stretch	stretch/ extension	stretched
glow	glow / glimmer	glowing
blend	blend/ blending	blended
float	float	floating
use	use / usage	useful / used
remind	reminder	reminding



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

glow	يتوهج / يلمع	glue	صمغ
landmark	معلم مشهور	landscape	منظر طبيعي
carve	ينحت	curve	منحني
wonder	يتساءل / يتعجب	wander	يتجول
float	يطفو	fleet	أسطول
whisper	يهمس	talk	يتكلم بصوت عادي
column	عمود رأسي (من فوق لتحت)	row	صف أفقي (من اليمين لليسان)
Piece	قطعة	masterpiece	تحفة فنية
visionary	ذو رؤية / صاحب أفكار مستقبلية	imaginative	مبتكر لأفكار جديدة أو خيالية
urban	حضري / متعلق بالمدينة	civil	مدني / متعلق بالمواطنين
ceremony	مراسم / احتفال رسمي	festival	حدث احتفالي كبير مع موسيقى، ألعاب
entire	كامل / بأكمله	enter	يدخل
sink	شئ يغرق أو يغوص في الماء	drown	شخص أو حيوان يغرق ويكون في خطر
surface	سطح / الجزء الخارجي	service	خدمة / تقديم مساعدة
religion	اسم دين (يشير إلى النظام أو المعتقد نفسه)	religious	ديني / متدين (تصف شخصاً مرتبطاً بالدين)
mystery	سر / لغز (شئ غير معروف أو صعب الفهم)	mysterious	غامض / مبهم
perfect	مثالي	perfection	الكمال

float, sink, drown & dive

float	يبقى على السطح	The ball floats on water.
sink	يهبط للأسفل	The stone sinks in the pond.
drown	يفرق ويموت بسبب الماء	The boy will drown if he cannot swim.
dive	يغوص عمداً في الماء	She dives into the pool.

history, historic, historical & historian

history (v)	التاريخ	I like learning history .
historic (adj)	تاريخي (مهم ومؤثر)	This is a historic event.
historical (adj)	تاريخي (له علاقة بالتاريخ)	We read a historical story.
historian (n)	مؤرخ	The historian studies the past.

"Famous Landmarks in Egypt"

Where is the Citadel of Qaitbay?

Famous Landmarks in Egypt

Some **landmarks** ⁽¹⁾ in Egypt are so remarkable that travelers plan **entire** ⁽²⁾ trips around them. The Pyramids of Giza are more than ancient tombs; they're **symbols** ⁽³⁾ of **genius** ⁽⁴⁾ and **mystery** ⁽⁵⁾. Standing before the Great Pyramid, you can't help but wonder how such **massive** ⁽⁶⁾ stones were placed so perfectly thousands of years ago. Nearby, the Sphinx watches silently, its face **half-worn** ⁽⁷⁾ by wind and time.

In Luxor, the Temple of Karnak **stretches** ⁽⁸⁾ proudly under the sun. Its enormous **columns** ⁽⁹⁾ and **hieroglyphs** ⁽¹⁰⁾ tell stories of kings. At night, the sound and light show brings history to life as voices echo through the ancient walls. Farther south, in Aswan, the Philae Temple seems to float on the Nile, **glowing** ⁽¹¹⁾ warmly in the evening light.

On the Mediterranean coast, the Library of Alexandria **blends** ⁽¹²⁾ modern architecture ⁽¹³⁾ with a deep respect for knowledge and history. In the desert of the New Valley, the Dakhla Oasis ⁽¹⁴⁾ surprises visitors with green palm groves ⁽¹⁵⁾ and **mud-brick** ⁽¹⁶⁾ villages that **whisper** ⁽¹⁷⁾ of Egypt's hidden past.

Finally, the **Citadel** ⁽¹⁸⁾ of Qaitbay in Alexandria and the Citadel of Salah El-Din in Cairo both stand proudly as **reminders** ⁽¹⁹⁾ of strength and resilience ⁽²⁰⁾. The best landmark isn't always the largest; it's the one that makes you feel the **spirit** ⁽²¹⁾ of Egypt long after you leave.



- (١) معالم / أماكن مشهورة
- (٢) كامل / بأكمله
- (٣) رموز
- (٤) عبقرية
- (٥) غموض
- (٦) ضخم / هائل
- (٧) نصف متآكل
- (٨) يمتد
- (٩) أعمدة
- (١٠) نقوش هيرغليفية
- (١١) متوهج / مشرق
- (١٢) يمتدج / يمزج
- (١٣) عمارة
- (١٤) واجهة
- (١٥) إساتين
- (١٦) مطلوب طبيعي
- (١٧) يهيمس
- (١٨) قلعة / حصن
- (١٩) تذكارات
- (٢٠) مرونة
- (٢١) روح / جوهر



Listening



Speaker 1 - Adam in San Sebastian, Spain

I arrived in San Sebastian this morning, and the city must be **proud of** its food **culture**. Every street seems to **lead to** a cafe or a restaurant. The coast line is stunning, so this place must be perfect for slow walks and quiet thinking. I tried pintxos for the first time. The chef explained each **ingredient** with real **care**, which might be why the **flavors** felt so **balanced**. The **rhythm** of life here looks relaxed, and people must be used to enjoying simple moments by the sea.

Speaker 2 - Ahmed in Angkor Wat, Cambodia

Standing near Angkor Wat at **sunrise**, I felt the builders must have been **visionary**. The scale of the temples is **enormous**, and the carvings are so detailed that they must have taken years of patient work. The **layout** seems carefully **aligned** with the sun, so the **architects** might have used advanced knowledge of astronomy. I noticed restored sections beside weathered stone. Walking there, I could almost hear the echoes of **rituals** that might have filled these halls centuries ago.

Speaker 3 - Jory in Cape Town, South Africa

Cape Town must be one of the best cities for nature lovers. From the **waterfront**, Table Mountain looks close enough to touch. I took the **cable car** at **sunset**. The sky must have been unusually clear because the city lights and the ocean were both **visible** in sharp detail. The mix of cultures here feels natural and welcoming, and that warmth might be what makes visitors feel at home so quickly. I left with the feeling that this trip must have changed how I see **urban** life and wild landscapes living side by side.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Some in Egypt are so remarkable that travelers plan entire trips around. **SB**
 a. landmarks b. traps c. speakers d. restrictions
2. In Luxor, the Temple of Karnak proudly under the sun. **SB**
 a. blends b. stretches c. includes d. fixes
3. In Aswan, the Philae Temple seems to on the Nile. **SB**
 a. move b. float c. concentrate d. focus
4. The coastline in San Sebastian is and perfect for slow walks. **SB**
 a. move b. float c. stunning d. focus
5. The temples in Angkor Wat have detailed that show great skill. **SB**
 a. songs b. urban c. candies d. carvings
6. The architects may have used astronomy to the layout with the sun. **SB**
 a. transmit b. reflect c. confuse d. align
7. Long ago, people performed special at the temples. **SB**
 a. rituals b. rules c. pictures d. roads
8. Cape Town combines natural beauty with modern life. **SB**
 a. urban b. floating c. comparative d. bored
9. She spoke in a quiet so no one else could hear. **SB R 3**
 a. shout b. laugh c. cry d. whisper
10. Life in a/an area means more transportation and noise. **SB R 3**
 a. cured b. traditional c. urban d. agricultural
11. The students painted a colorful on the school wall. **SB R 3**
 a. door b. recipe c. mural d. book
12. The long street will from the coast to the hill. **SB R 3**
 a. stop b. curve c. climb d. stretch
13. A is a famous place that represents a country or its history.
 a. castle b. reminder c. citadel d. landmark
14. means the design and style of buildings.
 a. Architecture b. Agriculture c. Pharmacy d. Biography
15. are special actions or ceremonies done in a traditional or religious way
 a. Rituals b. Rules c. Hieroglyphs d. Landmarks
16. means extremely beautiful or impressive.
 a. Stressful b. Stunning c. Depressing d. Boring
17. The builders of Angkor Wat must have been to create such a huge masterpiece.
 a. silly b. stupid c. visual d. visionary
18. The school held a graduation for all the students.
 a. blend b. ceremony c. meeting d. risk
19. The designed a modern building in the city center.
 a. architect b. butcher c. swimmer d. astronomer

20. He studies to learn more about stars, planets, and galaxies.
 a. architecture b. medicine c. engineering d. astronomy
21. The Mona Lisa is a famous of art that amazes everyone.
 a. meaning b. masterpiece c. game d. mastercard
22. The magician gave a/an performance that amazed the audience.
 a. impressive b. dull c. boring d. impressed
23. The of the ancient pyramids shows incredible skill and planning.
 a. furniture b. future c. architecture d. pressure
24. Her helped her overcome many difficult challenges in life.
 a. utterance b. ignorance c. difference d. resilience
25. She had to the secret so no one else could hear.
 a. declare b. publish c. announce d. whisper
26. The walls of the temple are covered with ancient
 a. metals b. hieroglyphs c. athletics d. ceremonies
27. His jacket was old and, but he still wore it every day.
 a. half-worn b. brand-new c. shiny d. fashionable
28. The candles were softly, creating a warm and peaceful atmosphere in the room.
 a. flying b. increasing c. blowing d. glowing
29. The view from the top of the mountain is absolutely.....
 a. stopping b. stunning c. spinning d. spoiling
30. Many people visit the temple every year to pray and celebrate festivals.
 a. religious b. imaginative c. fake d. fictional
31. The country has a beautiful with sandy beaches and cliffs.
 a. identification b. headline c. coastline d. deadline
32. The team showed great during the game, never giving up even when they were losing.
 a. depression b. ignorance c. stress d. spirit



Exercise on Main Vocabulary

33. The boats sailed along the during the summer.
 a. cast b. coastal c. coast d. cost
34. The kind heart is a of love and friendship.
 a. tomb b. landscape c. mural d. symbol
35. Photographs are good of happy memories.
 a. remember b. publisher c. announcer d. reminders
36. The old castle is full of and secrets.
 a. mastery b. mystery c. misery d. ceremony
37. The elephant is an animal that can weigh several tons.
 a. equal b. increasing c. urgent d. enormous
38. The cake has a round..... and is decorated with colorful icing and chocolate pieces
 a. scale b. shape c. sheep d. shade

39. She changed her several times to get a better view of the stage.
 a. position b. reaction c. feeling d. passport
40. She showed great by finishing the marathon though the weather was very bad.
 a. strength b. stress c. length d. laziness
41. The of the garden is very beautiful, with flowers, trees, arranged in perfect order.
 a. confusion b. moral c. pace d. layout
42. The overlooks the city from the top of the hill and protects it from any attack.
 a. mountain b. background c. river d. citadel
43. Teachers help students gain more every day by explaining new subjects.
 a. fortune b. knowledge c. fame d. money
44. The king's was discovered after many years, filled with ancient artifacts.
 a. tomb b. comb c. lamb d. hut
45. They carried a statue into the museum, which amazed everyone with its size.
 a. massive b. total c. global d. fictional
46. People from different countries visit museums to learn about the local
 a. confidence b. habit c. lecture d. culture
47. The old ship was slowly into the sea after the storm.
 a. sinking b. singing c. fixing d. repairing
48. Our trip to the ancient city was very, and we will never forget it.
 a. available b. forgettable c. memorable d. usable
49. The candles created a calm in the room during the ceremony.
 a. company b. temperature c. climate d. atmosphere
50. Our shows the history and culture of our people.
 a. scam b. pollution c. heritage d. bullying



Exercise on Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

51. The artist a masterpiece that everyone admires
 a. creates b. sits c. walks d. gives
52. Travel agencies help tourists entire trips across Egypt.
 a. do b. give c. blame d. plan
53. The museum exhibits history to life for visitors.
 a. have b. make c. bring d. take
54. She things carefully before the long journey.
 a. stretches b. increases c. feels d. arranges
55. The guide stories about people and events from the past
 a. tells b. makes c. gives d. does
56. Archaeologists discovered a/an past beneath the desert sands.
 a. appearing b. hidden c. disappeared d. hide
57. The new building blends the traditional architecture.
 a. at b. with c. on d. by

58. Tourists can float the Nile in traditional boats

- a. at b. with c. on d. by

59. All the pencils were used by the students.

- a. off b. of c. out d. up

60. Visitors can the spirit of Egypt in its ancient temples.

- a. feed b. feel c. make d. fail

61. The old carpet is by years of use.

- a. brand-new b. half-worn c. fresh-looking d. shiny

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

62. He was a visionary leader who imagined a brighter future. The synonyms of the underlined word are

SB R 3

- a. short-sighted b. forward-thinking c. reactive d. lazy e. innovative

63. They carried a massive statue into the museum. The synonym of the underlined word is "massive"

- a. tiny b. trivial c. small d. enormous e. gigantic

64. The scientist made a remarkable discovery that amazed everyone. The synonym of the underlined word "remarkable" is

- a. angry b. amazing c. impressive d. dull e. boring

65. The lanterns were glowing warmly in the room. The synonym of the underlined word "glowing" is

- a. shining b. dim c. fading d. sparkling e. reducing

66. The mountain cave is very deep and hard to explore. The antonym of the underlined word "deep" is

- a. profound b. shallow c. superficial d. mysterious e. enormous

67. The young inventor's genius solved many problems quickly. The antonym of the underlined word "genius" is

- a. stupidity b. foolishness c. talent d. skill e. intelligence

68. After the argument, the village returned to peace. The synonym of the underlined word "peace" is

- a. friendship b. love c. calm d. war e. conflict

69. The Sphinx watches silently without making any sound. The antonym of the underlined word "silently" is

- a. calmly b. peacefully c. loudly d. noisily e. soundlessly

70. The old village has hidden treasures under the ground. The antonym of the underlined word "hidden" is

- a. visible b. secret c. unseen d. seen e. buried

71. The team showed great spirit during the game. The synonym of the underlined word "spirit" is

- a. courage b. bravery c. weakness d. fear e. anger



الاستنتاج

Modal verbs of deduction

Key words Degree

- I'm sure
- I'm certain
- I think
- I believe
- certainly
- I suppose
- impossible

- I'm not sure
- I'm not certain
- perhaps
- It is probable
- It is possible

Present Deduction

استنتاج في المضارع

must + inf.

استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع

It is made of gold; it **must** cost a lot of money.**can't + inf.**

استنتاج مستبعد في المضارع

It is made of plastic; it **can't** cost a lot of money.**might (may - could) + inf.**

استنتاج محتمل في المضارع

I think Mr. Ahmed **might** be famous in the future.

Past Deduction

استنتاج في الماضي

must have + p.p.

استنتاج مؤكد في الماضي

The floor was full of water; Toka **must have forgotten** to close the tap.**can't have + p.p.**

استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي

The floor was full of water; Toka **can't have closed** the tap.**might (may-could) have + p.p.**

استنتاج محتمل في الماضي

I didn't see Jana at school today. She **might have been** absent.

① يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في المضارع ونستخدم:

(must - can't - might - may) + be + v + ing.★ Where is Jana? -I'm not sure. She **may be studying**.

② يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في الماضي ونستخدم:

(must - can't - might - may) + been + v + ing.★ I'm sure that Al Daifi was busy. He **must have been preparing** Giants' Revision.③ يمكننا عمل استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي ونستخدم **couldn't have + P.P** ولكن لا يمكننا استخدام **mustn't**:★ Mr Ahmed **couldn't have been** lazy as he worked hard.

Modal verbs of advice:

④ نستخدم **should (shouldn't) + inf.** أو **ought to (ought not to) + inf.** للتعبير عن النصيحة:★ In summer, tourists **should** wear a hat and **ought not to** sit in the sun.

Modal verbs of regret (blame):

④ نستخدم **should (shouldn't) have + P.P** أو **ought to (ought not to) have + P.P**

④ للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم لفعل أو عدم فعل شيء في الماضي:

★ You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.★ I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

★ I regret not coming on time. (regret + v + ing) يمكننا التعبير عن الندم أيضا باستخدام كلمة



Important Notes

Passive deduction الاستنتاج في المبني للمجهول

must / may / might / could / can't + be + P.P

must / may / might / could / can't + have been + P.P

★ The government **must have built** this school in 2000.

◆ This school **must have been built** in 2000.

★ They **could have repaired** the car yesterday.

◆ The car **could have been repaired** yesterday.

⑦ عند وجود تعبيرات مثل I don't know / I can't remember نستعمل غالباً (may - might - could)

★ I don't know where I left my mobile. I **might have left** it at home.

⑧ لاحظ جمل الاستنتاج غالباً ما تتكون من جملتين:

[وفي الغالب ليس هناك علاقة بين زمن الجملتين بل لابد من فهم المعنى] جملة دليل + جملة الاستنتاج

★ He is a successful professor. He **must have been** a good student.

★ He has lost his money. He **must be** sad.

★ He is dancing with joy. He **must have passed** the exam.

⑨ لاحظ التركيب **could have + P.P** يمكننا استخدامه للتعبير عن شيء كان ممكن أن يحدث في الماضي ولكنه لم يحدث

★ I travelled by bus although I **could have travelled** by car.

★ Ali **could have joined** a good university but he didn't study hard.



Exercise 04

Language Level 1

- That be my uncle's car. His car is blue, not red. SB R 3
 a. must b. can't c. don't d. could
- She's wearing a uniform. She be a nurse. SB R 3
 a. can't b. must c. must to d. must not
- This house looks very old. It be more than 120 years old. SB
 a. must b. might have c. can't d. must have
- The lights are off; they be at home. SB
 a. must b. can't c. might d. must have
- The museum was closed yesterday, so you visited it. SB
 a. must have b. can't have c. might d. must
- The footprints are fresh. The animal passed here a short time ago. SB
 a. might b. can't have c. must have been d. must have
- He was here a minute ago. He have gone too far. إسنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. oughtn't c. mustn't d. can't
- He be French but I am not sure. الجيزة منازل ٢٠٢٤
 a. might b. must c. can't d. will
- Salah have played yesterday's match. He was injured. شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤
 a. mustn't b. should c. must d. can't
- Sameh has been superior in all his exams. He clever. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
 a. must be b. must have had c. can't have been d. may have been
- This restaurant is full of people. It good. الحيات ٢٠٢٤
 a. must be b. can't be c. must have been d. can't have been
- He Egyptian. He doesn't speak Arabic. أخميم ٢٠٢٤
 a. might be b. couldn't be c. must be d. can't be

Unit 12



بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤

أطفيح ٢٠٢٤

سيدى غازى ٢٠٢٤

الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

أشمون ٢٠٢٤

الشن ٢٠٢٤

أبو تشت ٢٠٢٤

بنى مزار ٢٠٢٤

طنطا ٢٠٢٤

الواحي الجديد ٢٠٢٣

ميت غمر ٢٠٢٣

ادارة الشهداء ٢٠٢٣

الغربية ٢٠٢٣

EM

EM

EM

EM

EM

EM

EM

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤



Exercise 9h

Language Level 2

13. Ali injured. There was blood on his face.
a. must be b. must have been c. can't have been d. may
14. He a doctor. He knows nothing about medicine.
a. must be b. can be c. could be d. can't be
15. He have answered well in the exam. He looks very sad and upset.
a. may b. must c. can't d. should
16. This watch is made of gold. It expensive.
a. must be b. can't be c. can't been d. might have
17. I explained it, but she have understood. My French is poor.
a. can't b. can c. must d. shouldn't
18. He always does his work seriously. He careless.
a. must be c. should be b. can't be d. may be
19. Someone is helping her to walk. She be ill.
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. should
20. That person over there a doctor. He is only eighteen.
a. must be b. may be c. can't be d. should be
21. The players are all very happy. They have won the match.
a. must b. mustn't c. can't d. might
22. I don't know where Suzan is. She have gone to the sports centre.
a. can b. shouldn't c. might d. mustn't
23. She's won prizes for her research. She worked hard.
a. can't have b. must c. must have d. might
24. I have just seen him. He have gone far.
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. shouldn't
25. He did quite opposite what I said. He understood my words.
a. must b. can't c. must have d. can't have
26. Look! The lock is broken. Someone broken into the house.
a. must have b. can't have c. must be d. mustn't have
27. I don't know where Mr Adel is; he be busy working. I have no idea.
a. can't b. must c. might d. mustn't
28. You have seen my dad in the club; he is still away on business.
a. must b. should c. couldn't d. might
29. Shorouk is not here yet. She be stuck in traffic; who knows?
a. might b. should c. mustn't d. must
30. All the customers like that shop assistant, so he be a good man.
a. must b. shouldn't c. can't d. might
31. No one knows where the tourist comes from; he be Italian.
a. must b. shouldn't c. could d. can't
32. That.....an interesting film. I can see a lot of people queuing to get into the cinema.
a. might have been b. can't be c. must have been d. must be
33. His home far because he always walks to work.
a. might have been b. can't be c. must have been d. must be

34. Hazem is late for school. He the bus.

a. can't have missed b. will have missed c. must have missed d. mightn't have missed

35. When I knocked on the door, there was no answer. They out. ٢٠٢٤ السادات
a. must be b. must have been c. can't be d. can't have been
36. She missed the train. She up early. ٢٠٢٤ شرق الاسكندرية
a. must get b. must have got c. can't get d. can't have got
37. The toys are everywhere in the room. The children there. ٢٠٢٤ طما
a. must play b. must have played c. can't have played d. might play
38. The thieves in through the window; the flat is on the 12th. ٢٠٢٤ الوادي الجديد
a. must have got b. must get c. should have got d. can't have got
39. The door of the cell was broken so the prisoners through it. ٢٠٢٤ البليفا
a. must escape b. must have escaped c. can't escape d. can't have escaped
40. Dr Magdy Yacoub is an internationally famous surgeon. He a clever student. ٢٠٢٤ هيبا
a. must be b. must have c. must have been d. can't be
41. They are looking under the table and all around. They something. ٢٠٢٤ فاقوس
a. can't have lost b. should be lost c. must be lost d. might have lost
42. I have lost one of my gloves, I it somewhere. ٢٠٢٤ المنيا
a. must have dropped b. need to drop c. should have dropped d. have to drop
43. Sara got the worst mark in the class. She hard. ٢٠٢٤ نقادة
a. shouldn't study b. might study c. must study d. can't have studied
44. Lamiaa that necklace. I am sure she had no money at that time. ٤٣٣
a. might have bought b. can't buy c. can't have bought d. might buy
45. The police think the suspect the country using a fake passport; they are still investigating the matter. ٤٣٣
a. may have left b. should have left c. must have left d. might have been left
46. She there. Her car keys are still here. ٤٣٣
a. may have driven b. shouldn't have driven c. must have driven d. can't have driven
47. The earthquake destructive; thousands of people were killed in Turkey. ٤٣٣
a. must have been b. might be c. shouldn't have been d. mustn't have been
48. The robber into the flat through the window; it is neither broken nor open. ٤٣٣
a. can't break b. can't have broken c. must break d. shouldn't have broken
49. Strangely, I found the front door open. Someone it with a key; it wasn't broken. ٤٣٣
a. must have opened b. must open c. mustn't have opened d. might open
50. My friend left hospital and went to work yesterday. He must have become better. The previous sentence shows ٤٣٣
a. necessity b. deduction c. probability d. prohibition
51. My neighbour the murderer; all witnesses confirmed that he was in another place at that time. ٤٣٣
a. might have been b. can't be c. can't have been d. must be
52. Oh, good! We've got meat. Mother it yesterday. I'm quite sure. ٤٣٣
a. must buy b. must have bought c. might buy d. might have bought
53. I think I the air conditioning on. Please can you check? ٤٣٣
a. must have left b. should have left c. might have left d. mustn't have left
54. Sarah hasn't contacted me. She my message. ٤٣٣
a. can't have got b. can have got c. must have got d. can't get
55. I saw him running in the street, he in a hurry. ٤٣٣
a. must be b. can't be c. must have been d. can't have been

56. They are all wearing coats, so it cold when they took this photograph!
 a. must have been b. must be c. can't have been d. can be
57. All the pupils understood the lesson yesterday, it difficult.
 a. must be b. can't have been c. could be d. can't be
58. I wonder why she hasn't replied to my message. I suppose she got it.
 a. might not have b. can't have c. must have d. might not
59. No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he gone to see his uncle.
 a. needn't have b. can't have c. might have d. must have
60. I'm sure what he said was correct. He mistaken.
 a. can't have been b. may be c. must be d. can't be
61. He passed the exam. He happy.
 a. must b. can't have been c. can't be d. must be
62. During the football match, the player fell to the ground in pain. He hurt.
 a. must have been b. must be c. can't be d. can't have been



Exercise 10 Language Level 3

63. You here as it's a military area so you have to pay a fine. دير ب نجم ٢٠٢٤
 a. had to park c. shouldn't have parked
 b. mustn't have parked d. didn't have to park
64. Dr Farouk El Baz is a great scientist. He a very good student. العريش ٢٠٢٤
 a. must be b. can't be c. can't have been d. must have been
65. He is a famous doctor. He a clever student when he was young. الباجور ٢٠٢٤
 a. must be b. can't be c. must have been d. can't have been
66. The police can't yet solve the mystery; they guess that the thief gloves while opening the safe. البلدشين ٢٠٢٤
 a. can't have used b. might have used c. should have used d. will have used
67. She the exam if she'd studied a bit more.
 a. must pass b. can't have passed c. could pass d. could have passed
68. She has forgotten about the meeting. We reminded her about it yesterday.
 a. can have b. shouldn't have c. must have d. should have

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1. I'm sure this street is very old. (must) | SB |
| 2. I'm not sure; the shop was open earlier. (might have) | SB |
| 3. It's impossible that the tourists arrived already. (can't have) | SB |
| 4. I'm sure this building was important in the past. (must have) | SB |
| 5. Maybe the guide will show us another landmark. (might) | SB |
| 6. I'm certain he isn't at school. | (can't) |
| 7. Maybe it is raining in London. | (might) |
| 8. I'm sure this is the right bus. | (must) |
| 9. Perhaps he is reading in his room. | (could) |
| 10. It's possible that the news is true. | (may) |
| 11. I don't think she is Egyptian. | (can't) |
| 12. Perhaps they are brothers. | (could) |
| 13. I'm sure he passed the exam. | (must) |
| 14. I'm sure she didn't see us. | (can't) |
| 15. Perhaps they forgot my address. | (might) |
| 16. It's possible that she lost her phone. | (may) |
| 17. Perhaps she missed the train. | (could) |

People and Places

- 3 A Tour in a Quiet Town
4 City Neighborhoods
5 Travel Journal



Key Vocabulary

joggers (n)	عدّائون	neighborhood (n)	حي / منطقة سكنية	flavor (n)	نكهة
vendors (n)	باعة	pace (n)	سرعة / وتيرة	flavorful (adj)	مليء بالنكهة / شهى
street vendors (n)	باعة جانلون	variety (n)	تنوع / تشكيلة	brand new (adj)	جديد تمامًا
bargain (n/v)	صفقة رابحة / يساوم	possibility (n)	إمكانية / احتمال	evidence (n)	واضح / جلي
murals (n)	جداريات	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / مسالم	memorable (adj)	لا ينسى
simmer (v)	يطبخ على نار هادئة	riverside (n)	ضفة النهر	heritage (n)	تراث
tunes (n)	ألحان / نغمات	parkside (n)	بجوار الحديقة / مطّل على الحديقة	historic (adj)	تاريخي

Main Vocabulary

represent (v)	يمثل	square (n)	ميدان / ساحة	temple (n)	معبد
style (n)	أسلوب / طراز	gallery (n)	معرض	contrast (n)	تباين / اختلاف
community (n)	مجتمع	speed (n)	سرعة	pharaohs (n)	الفراعنة
path (n)	طريق / مسار	lively (adj)	حيوي	employ (v)	يوظف / يستخدم
monuments (n)	أثار / معالم تاريخية	stew (n)	يخنة / طبق مطبوخ ببطء	appearance (n)	مظهر / شكل
sunrise (n)	شروق الشمس	countryside (n)	الريف	journal (n)	مجلة / دفتر يوميات
downtown (n)	وسط المدينة	cover (n/v)	يغطي / غطاء	fantasy (n)	خيال
lane (n)	حارة / ممر ضيق	belong to (v)	ينتمي إلى / ملك لـ	thoughts (n)	أفكار
cheerfully (adv)	بمروح / بسعادة	dozens (n)	عشرات	sights (n)	معالم / مناظر / مشاهد
open-air (adj)	في الهواء الطلق	crowded (adj)	مزدحم / مكتظ	real (adj)	حقيقي
artist (n)	فنان	memory (n)	ذاكرة / ذكرى	imaginary (adj)	خيالي
playful (adj)	لعوب / مرح / يحب المزاح	structure (n)	هيكل / تركيب	sensory (adj)	حسي
spread (n/v)	ينتشر / يفرّد	penalty (n)	عقوبة / جزاء / غرامة	vivid (adj)	واضح / حي
serve (v)	يقدم / يخدم	flow (v)	يتدفق / يسيل / يتدفق	factual (adj)	واقعي / حقيقي
link (n/v)	رابط / صلة	footprint (n)	أثر قدم / بصمة / أثري	reflect (v)	يعكس / يتأمل
shopkeeper (n)	صاحب متجر / بائع	personal (adj)	شخصي	reflective (adj)	تأملي / عاكس
beyond (prep)	ما وراء / أبعد من	nearby (adj)	قريب	drawings (n)	رسومات

Collocations

play lively tunes	يعزف ألحانًا حيوية	share a story	يشارك قصة
paint murals	يرسم جداريات	feel amazed	يشعر بالدهشة / الإعجاب
spread picnic blankets	يفرد أغطية النزهة	paint pictures	يرسم صور
represent a heritage	يمثل تراثًا	serve lunches	يقدم وجبات الغداء

Expressions & Prepositions

the heart of the action	قلب الحدث	begin with	يبدأ بـ
covered with	مغطى بـ	set up	يقيم / ينشئ
agree on a lower price	يتفق على سعر أقل	shine on the water	يلمع على الماء
painted on walls	مرسوم على الجدران	in contrast	على النقيض / في المقابل
along the riverside	على طول ضفة النهر	on weekends	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
over the moon	سعيد جداً / في قمة السعادة	turns into	يتحول إلى
a variety of	تشكيلة من	break into	يقتحم / يدخل بالقوة
focus on	يركز على	flow through the trees	يتدفق بين الأشجار
open-air gallery	معرض في الهواء الطلق	lie beyond	يقع خلف / فيما وراء
contrast with	يتباين مع	compare ...with	يقارن بـ
below boiling	أقل من درجة الغليان		

Definitions

joggers	عداؤون	▶ people who run slowly for exercise
vendors	باعة	▶ people who sell things, often on the street or in markets
pace	سرعة / وتيرة	▶ the speed at which something or someone moves
bargain	يساوم / صفقة رابحة	▶ to discuss and agree on a lower price when buying something
tunes	أنحان / نغمات	▶ traditional songs or music that represent a community's heritage
murals	جداريات	▶ large pictures painted on walls
simmer	يُطهى على نار هادئة	▶ to cook slowly in hot liquid just below boiling

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
famous	مشهور	well-known, renowned, celebrated	unknown, obscure, hidden
vendor	بائع	seller, merchant, shopkeeper	buyer, customer, purchaser
pace	إيقاع / سرعة	speed, tempo, rate	slowness, stagnation, delay
bargain	يساوم / صفقة رابحة	deal, agreement, negotiation	overpay, loss, rip-off
lively	حيوي / حي	energetic, vibrant, spirited	dull, boring, lifeless
contrast	تباين / فرق	difference, distinction, disparity	similarity, likeness, resemblance
friendly	ودود	kind, warm, welcoming	unfriendly, hostile, cold
bright	مشرق	radiant, shining, vivid	dull, dark, dim
peaceful	هادئ	calm, quiet, serene	noisy, chaotic, violent
spread	ينشر / يفرش	stretch, unfold, lay out	gather, collect, fold
possibility	احتمال	chance, opportunity, likelihood	impossibility, unlikelihood, certainty
historic	تاريخي	significant, memorable, ancient	modern, new

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
move	يتحرك	movement	حركة	moving	متحرك
shine	يلمع / يشرق	shine	لمعان	shiny	لامع
bargain	يساوم	bargain	مساومة / صفقة	bargainable	قابل للمساومة
spread	ينشر / يفرش	spread	انتشار	spread / spreading	منتشر / ممتد
link	يربط	link	رابط / صلة	linked	مرتبط
play	يلعب / يعزف	player	لاعب / عازف	playful / played	مروح / معزوف



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

murals	جداريات (رسومات على الجوانب)	morals	أخلاق / مبادئ
pace	سرعة / إيقاع	peace	سلام
present	حاضر / يقدم	represent	يمثل
neighbor	جار	neighborhood	حي / منطقة سكنية
lane	ممر / حارة	lean	يميل / نحيف
memory	ذاكرة / ذكرى	memorable	لا ينسى / جدير بالتذكر
spice	بهارات / توابل	spicy	حار
remember	يتذكر	remind	يذكر
flavor	نكهة / طعم	favorable	ذو نكهة قوية
tune	لحن	tone	نبرة / لهجة
sight	منظر / رؤية	site	موقع / مكان
heir	وريث (شخص يرث ما لنا أو لقباً)	heritage	تراث / ميراث ثقافي
spread	ينشر أو يفرش بشكل عام (أخبار، بطانية، راحة)	publish	ينشر رسمياً (كتاب، مقال، خبر)
simmer	يطهى على نار هادئة	swimmer	سباح

vary, various, varied & variety

vary (v)	يتغير / يختلف / يتنوع	Prices vary depending on the quality of the product.
various (adj)	متنوع / متعدد	Students use various techniques to learn.
varied (adj)	متنوع / متباين	The team has a varied range of skills.
variety (n)	تشكيلة / تنوع	There is a wide variety of books in the library.

neighbor, neighboring, neighborly & neighborhood

neighbor	جار	My neighbor is very friendly.
neighboring	مجاور / قريب من	We visited the neighboring town.
neighborly	ودي / متعاون	He gave me a neighborly smile.
neighborhood	حي / منطقة سكنية	I live in a quiet neighborhood .

"City Neighborhoods"

What makes a city beautiful?

A city isn't only its famous **sights**; ⁽¹⁾ it's a living variety of **neighborhoods** ⁽²⁾, each with its own color, style, and story. In **Riverside**, ⁽³⁾ mornings begin with **joggers** ⁽⁴⁾ following the river path as the first sunlight shines on the water. **Street vendors** ⁽⁵⁾ roll open their carts, filling the air with the smell of fresh bread and **roasted** ⁽⁶⁾ coffee. The **pace** ⁽⁷⁾, here is slower than downtown and the air feels fresher after sunrise. By noon, Old Market becomes the heart of the action. Its narrow **lanes** ⁽⁸⁾ are busier than any modern mall, and prices are lower than you'd expect. Shoppers **bargain** ⁽⁹⁾ **cheerfully** ⁽¹⁰⁾, and musicians play lively **tunes** ⁽¹¹⁾ on corners.

In contrast, Tech Square is cleaner and quieter, but cafes are more expensive and the glass buildings stand taller than the rest. On weekends, **Parkside** ⁽¹²⁾ turns into an open-air **gallery** ⁽¹³⁾.

Local artists paint **murals** ⁽¹⁴⁾ that are brighter and more **playful** ⁽¹⁵⁾ than the gray office walls **nearby** ⁽¹⁶⁾. Families **spread** ⁽¹⁷⁾ picnic blankets, and soft music flows through the trees.

If you're hungry, Little **Spice** ⁽¹⁸⁾ serves the most flavorful lunches-**stews** ⁽¹⁹⁾ simmer for hours, and the bread is very warm and fresh. Although each area moves to its own style, all are **linked** ⁽²⁰⁾ by the same friendly hello from smiling **shopkeepers** ⁽²¹⁾. The real beauty of a city lies beyond its monuments-in the corner cafe where someone remembers your name.



- (١) معالم
- (٢) أحياء
- (٣) على ضفاف النهر
- (٤) عدائون
- (٥) باعة متجولون
- (٦) محمص
- (٧) وتيرة/سرعة الحركة
- (٨) شوارع ضيقة
- (٩) يفاوض
- (١٠) بمرح/يسرور
- (١١) النجان/أنغام
- (١٢) جانب الحديقة
- (١٣) معرض
- (١٤) جداريات
- (١٥) أكثر مرخاً
- (١٦) قريب بالجوار
- (١٧) يفرق/ينشر
- (١٨) بهار
- (١٩) يغثات
- (٢٠) مرتبط/متصل
- (٢١) البائعون



Listening



Welcome, everyone. My name is Mr. Farid, and I'll be your **guide** today on our **walking tour** through this **quiet** old town. As we walk along the **narrow** streets, you might **notice** how **peaceful** the **atmosphere** is. This town has hardly changed in the last fifty years, so you must feel as if you are travelling **back in time**.

On your left, you can see the old stone **bakery**. It must have been the heart of the town many years ago because people from nearby villages used to bring their wheat here. Some say the bakery might have **belonged to** one of the richest families in the area. However, it can't have produced large amounts of bread, because the building is too small.

Ahead of us is the silent wooden **bridge**. It might be more than a hundred years old. The design is simple, so it must have been built by local carpenters using basic tools.

Now, as we reach the town square, you can see children playing **safely**. Families still enjoy gathering here, and that is why this place must be one of the most welcome spots in the whole region. I hope you enjoy discovering the hidden stories of this quiet town.



Exercise 24

Key Vocabulary

1. Every morning, dozens of..... run along the riverside path before work. SB
 a. animals b. joggers c. bargains d. metals
2. Street..... were setting up their carts early, selling coffee and sandwiches. SB
 a. vendors b. waiters c. pavers d. cleaners
3. Life in the countryside moves at a slower than in the city. SB
 a. gate b. price c. pace d. peace
4. I found a great on these shoes they were half price! SB
 a. time b. balance c. metal d. bargain
5. The walls of the old building are covered with colorful..... that tell the city's history. SB
 a. bargain b. murals c. morals d. rubbers
6. Let the soup for ten minutes so the flavors blend well SB
 a. simmer b. cook c. shape d. recover
7. I live in a quiet where people know each other well.
 a. space b. neighbor c. neighborhood d. planet
8. This soup has a rich that everyone enjoys.
 a. favor b. spoil c. shape d. flavor
9. The meal was very and full of spices.
 a. flavorful b. peaceful c. shy d. calm
10. The shop offers a wide of fresh fruits and vegetables.
 a. vary b. variety c. various d. different
11. She bought a -new phone that works perfectly.
 a. band b. pond c. brand d. blend
12. There is a strong..... that we will travel tomorrow.
 a. possibility b. possible c. pass d. position
13. The police found clear that proved the truth.
 a. simmer b. evidence c. shape d. cover
14. It is a place where people can relax and feel safe.
 a. noisy b. complicated c. peaceful d. boring
15. The school trip was a experience for all the students.
 a. summary b. memory c. shameful d. memorable
16. We sat by the and enjoyed the fresh air.
 a. space b. sky c. slums d. riverside
17. The old is an important part of our national heritage.
 a. evidence b. cooker c. castle d. carriage
18. They live in a house with a beautiful view.
 a. partner b. parkside c. park d. pesticide
19. The ancient was built from strong stone many years ago.
 a. jogger b. river c. structure d. planet
20. The smell of fresh bread through the whole house.
 a. introduced b. spread c. polished d. increased
21. The story is a about a magical world full of strange creatures
 a. fantasy b. comedy c. tragedy d. humanity
22. Walking at a steady is good for health.
 a. space b. peace c. piece d. pace
23. She keeps a to write about her daily events and ideas.
 a. journal b. journey c. geography d. noticeboard



Exercise 09 Main Vocabulary

24. This monument represents the rich and long history of the city.
a. pollution b. fiction c. culture d. lecture
25. The puppy ran around the garden and chased butterflies.
a. historic b. steady c. boiled d. playful
26. The movie is about an world that does not exist in real life.
a. urgent b. imaginary c. international d. factual
27. She shared her about the future with her close friends.
a. joggers b. spaces c. thoughts d. brains
28. The city becomes very crowded in the evening with families and tourists.
a. circle b. square c. style d. mountain
29. His writing is simple, clear, and easy for everyone to understand.
a. square b. style c. mural d. road
30. We visited a small that displays beautiful paintings by local artists.
a. gallery b. playground c. bakery d. plane
31. The local works together to improve life in the neighborhood.
a. city b. history c. planet d. community
32. The driver reduced his to stay safe near the busy school area.
a. speed b. size c. price d. fast
33. A narrow leads from the village to the river through the trees.
a. bass b. path c. pass d. bath
34. The street is with music, laughter, and friendly people.
a. dull b. dead c. lively d. complex
35. She cooked a tasty that the whole family enjoyed at lunch.
a. evidence b. stamp c. straw d. stew
36. We woke up early to watch the beautiful over the mountains.
a. pace b. jogger c. flavor d. sunrise
37. Many people prefer living in the because life there is calm.
a. countryside b. market c. lane d. mall
38. The old is full of small shops and traditional houses.
a. flavor b. pace c. lane d. temple
39. I bought this jacket at half during the big sale.
a. historic b. historical c. price d. prize
40. The children greeted their teacher at the school gate as they love him so much.
a. cowardly b. cheerfully c. healthy d. carelessly
41. of visitors come to the museum every day to see its treasures.
a. Pairs b. Dozens c. Squares d. Lanes
42. They enjoyed a/an concert in the park on a warm evening.
a. old-fashioned b. well-behaved c. half-worn d. open-air
43. Tourists love to the old streets and markets of the city.
a. explore b. pollute c. expire d. encourage
44. The restaurant traditional food to guests and tourists.
a. spoils b. serves c. waits d. survives
45. This museum tells the of the city through old objects.
a. history b. novel c. poetry d. future
46. The bridge the two sides of the city across the river.
a. links b. communicates c. contacts d. creates

47. The classroom walls were well-decorated with children's drawings.
 a. ugly b. passive c. color d. colorful
48. The greeted customers kindly and helped them choose items.
 a. gardener b. goalkeeper c. shopkeeper d. geographer
49. She enjoys eating food with strong and rich flavors.
 a. historic b. linked c. spicy d. spice



Exercise Ph

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

50. Writing helps me on my daily experiences and lessons.
 a. affect b. link c. reflect d. detect
51. Street musicians lively tunes that attract many people.
 a. do b. give c. make d. play
52. Families picnic blankets and enjoy the sunny day.
 a. makes b. spread c. feel d. clarify
53. The main square is the of the action during festivals.
 a. heart b. lung c. head d. hand
54. Families like to walk the riverside in the evening.
 a. off b. in c. on d. along
55. This old building a heritage passed through generations.
 a. makes b. represents c. presents d. collects
56. Young artists murals to show the culture of the city.
 a. paint b. give c. do d. feel
57. The buyer and the seller agreed a lower price after talking.
 a. off b. in c. on d. along
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
58. The market offers a wide variety of fruits and vegetables. The synonym of variety is...
 a. rule b. sameness c. limit d. choice e. difference
59. There is a possibility of success if you work hard. The synonym of "possibility" is
 a. chance b. fact c. opportunity d. limit e. limited
60. The vendor sells fruit in the street every morning. The synonym of "vendor" is
 a. customer b. driver c. buyer d. seller e. merchant
61. Life in the village has a slow pace. The synonym of pace is
 a. noise b. speed c. rate d. idea e. place
62. The people in this town are very friendly. The opposite of friendly is
 a. unfriendly b. rude c. kind d. helpful e. honest
63. The room looks bright in the morning sunlight. The opposite of bright is
 a. colorful b. shiny c. light d. dark e. dull
64. The village is a peaceful place to live. The opposite of peaceful is
 a. calm b. gentle c. noisy d. violent e. quiet
65. The mosque is a historic building. The synonym of historic is
 a. new b. old c. ancient d. future e. modern
66. There is a clear contrast between the city and the countryside. The synonym of contrast is
 a. difference b. collect c. order d. distinction e. peace
67. The fire began to spread quickly. The synonym of spread is
 a. stop b. expand c. enlarge d. hide e. close
68. The blanket cannot cover the bed. The opposite of cover is
 a. reveal b. uncover c. wrap d. shield e. protect



Skills

Unit

12

الجزء الثالث
المهارات

Part 3

Travel Journal

يوميات السفر / مذكرات السفر

Steps to Write a Travel Journal

خطوات كتابة يوميات السفر

1) Start with the Basic:

- ★ Write the date, place, and maybe the weather. اكتب التاريخ والمكان، وربما الطقس.

Example: June 15 – Paris, France. Sunny and warm.

2) Describe What Happened:

- ★ Write about what you did, saw, and ate. Use the past tense.

اكتب عن ما فعلته، وما شاهدته، وما أكلته. استخدم صيغة الماضي.

Example: I visited the Eiffel Tower and took amazing photos from the top.

3) Add Your Feelings and Thoughts أضف مشاعرك وأفكارك

- ★ Say how the experience made you feel. قل كيف جعلتك التجربة تشعر.

Example: I felt excited and a bit nervous because of the height.

4) Include Details أضف التفاصيل

- ★ Mention sounds, smells, and colors. اذكر الأصوات والروائح والألوان.

Example: The smell of fresh croissants filled the air near the bakery.

5) Reflect on the Experience تأمل في التجربة

- ★ End with a thought or lesson. اختتم بفكرة أو درس تعلمته.

Example: This day taught me to enjoy every new adventure.

July 15, 2025 – Luxor, Egypt



Today I visited the Temple of Karnak with my family. We arrived early in the morning, and the weather was warm and sunny. The temple was very big, and I saw tall columns with beautiful drawings on them. We walked around with a tour guide who told us interesting stories about the pharaohs. I took many photos and tried some local food near the temple. It was delicious but a little spicy. I felt amazed by the history of the place. This visit helped me understand more about ancient Egypt, and it is a day I will always remember.



Exercise

Writing

- What do you write first in a travel journal?
 - Feelings
 - Date & place
 - Food
 - Lesson
- Which tense do you use?
 - Present
 - Past
 - Future
 - Continuous
- What makes your journal interesting?
 - Colors & smells
 - Only place
 - Only feelings
 - Only date
- What is reflecting?
 - Date
 - Lesson
 - Drawing
 - Food

5. What is a fantasy journey?
a. Real trip b. Family trip c. Imaginary d. description
6. How to describe food?
a. Taste & look b. Price c. Name d. color
7. What are the basics of writing a travel journal?
a. Thoughts b. Date, place, weather
c. Lesson d. Sounds
8. When writing a travel journal, what to do at the end?
a. Weather b. Photo c. Lesson d. Date
9. When writing a travel journal, how to make readers feel there?
a. Colors & sounds b. Only date c. Numbers d. Lesson
10. How to write a fantasy journey?
a. Facts b. Creative c. Date d. Places
11. What should you write first in a travel journal?
a. The date, place, and weather b. Your feelings
c. What you ate d. A lesson you learned

Unit
12

Assessment Corner

A Vocabulary & Structure

1. phosphoric signs help drivers see the road at night.
a. Visionary b. Half-worn c. Glowing d. Urban
2. As historical, the Pyramids are known all over the world.
a. landmarks b. rituals c. carvings d. echoes
3. Hana is in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be
4. Mom the meat until it was ready.
a. overlooked b. simmered c. flowed d. bargained

B Translation

1. Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

أ- تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً إلى حد ما، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.
 ب- تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.
 ج- تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تدعيم طلابهم على المشاركة في بعض الأنشطة.
 د- تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مسلياً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

C Writing

1. I'm sure this street is very old.
2. I'm not sure; the shop was open earlier.

(must)
(might have)



Vocabulary



1) Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options.

- The cook had to adjust the seasoning of the food. The synonyms of the underlined word are
a. keep the same b. modify c. ignore d. adapt e. discard
- He was a visionary leader who imagined a brighter future. The synonyms of the underlined word are
a. short-sighted b. forward-thinking c. reactive d. lazy e. innovative
- After working hard, nothing is like the comfort of returning home. The antonyms of the underlined word are
a. ease b. discomfort c. distress d. happiness e. coziness
- I bought the chocolate bar on impulse while waiting in line at the store. The antonyms of the underlined word are
a. urge b. planned c. intended d. naturalness e. adaptation
- He decided to swap his usual coffee for a cup of tea today. The synonyms of the underlined word are
a. keep b. exchange c. discard d. trade e. preserve
- Online shopping is convenient when you don't have time to visit stores. The antonyms of the underlined word are
a. handy b. useful c. troublesome d. helpful e. awkward

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- The off the fabric was so high that it stayed soft after many washes.
a. quality b. adequacy c. necessity d. punctuality
- You can find canned vegetables in the third of the store.
a. mural b. recipe c. aisle d. whisper
- Life in a/an area means more transportation and noise.
a. cured b. traditional c. urban d. agricultural
- Toy cars made of strong plastic have good
a. smell b. durability c. size d. touch
- Paella is a famous Spanish
a. list b. picture c. landmark d. recipe
- The students painted a colorful on the school wall.
a. door b. recipe c. mural d. book
- Keep your in case you need to return the item later.
a. receipt b. shopping cart c. shopping list d. ticket
- My brother has a horrible from dust.
a. taste b. habit c. allergy d. likeness
- The long street will from the coast to the hill.
a. stop b. curve c. climb d. stretch
- The new phone comes with a one-year for repairs.
a. bill b. receipt c. warranty d. recipe

11. She spoke in a quiet so no one else could hear.

- a. shout b. laugh c. cry d. whisper

12. They need to check their situation before planning the trip.

- a. social b. financial c. mental d. emotional

13. The sauce was so that my mouth felt hot.

- a. sweet b. spicy c. cold d. bitter

14. I feel deep for all the help you gave me.

- a. gratitude b. anger c. worry d. sadness



Language

15. She asked me if I the news about the painted murals.

- a. had heard b. have heard c. hear d. am hearing

16. They asked where the previous summer.

- a. did we go b. we had gone c. we went d. are we going

17. I'm really hungry. I think I a pizza tonight.

- a. will order b. am going to order c. orders d. am ordering

18. She's wearing a uniform. She be a nurse.

- a. can't b. must c. must to d. must not

19. She said that they for hours.

- a. waited b. were waiting c. had been waiting d. have waited

20. They to Tokyo next week. The flights are booked.

- a. will travel b. are going to travel c. traveled d. are traveling

21. That be my uncle's car. His car is blue, not red.

- a. must b. can't c. don't d. could

22. We shop at the new mall on Friday.

- a. are going to b. going to c. will be d. having

1) Rewrite the following sentences:

23. "I have already finished my project," said Mona.

(Mona said that...)

24. "Where did you buy this camera?" my friend asked.

(My friend asked me where...)

25. The train left. Then we reached the station.

(By the time we reached...)

26. I didn't understand the innovation until the scientist explained it.

(Only after the scientist...)

27. She saved enough money. Then she bought a laptop.

(After she had saved...)



Translation

28. Renewable energy is the key to a sustainable future, as it reduces pollution and helps us preserve natural resources for future generations.

أ. الطاقة المتجددة هي المفتاح لمستقبل مستدام، حيث تقلل من التلوث وتساعدنا على الحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية للأجيال القادمة.

ب. الطاقة المتجددة هي المفتاح لمستقبل سيء، حيث تقلل من التلوث وتساعدنا على تدمير الموارد الطبيعية للأجيال القادمة.

ج. الطاقة الشمسية هي المفتاح لمستقبل مستدام، حيث تزيد من التلوث وتساعدنا على الحفاظ على الموارد البشرية للأجيال القادمة.

د. الطاقة المتجددة هي المفتاح لماضي مستدام، حيث تقلل من التلوث وتساعدنا على الحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية للأجيال القادمة.

٢٩. يجب على الشباب استخدام التفكير النقدي والابتكار للمساهمة في حل المشكلات البيئية التي تواجه كوكبنا.

a. Youth must use critical thinking and innovation to contribute to solving the environmental problems facing our planet.

b. Youth should using critical think and innovate for contribute in solve environmental problems facing our planet.



- c. The young people must use critical thought and innovative to contribute to solve the environmental problems which faces our planet.
- d. Youth must useful critical thinking and innovation to contribution in solving environmental problems that facing our planet.



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

As the world transitions toward a greener future, the shift to sustainable energy has become a global priority. Many environmentalists argue that our reliance on fossil fuels is the primary cause of the climate crisis. However, the move to renewable sources like solar and wind power is more than just a technical change; it represents a commitment to protecting the planet for future generations. For instance, countries with vast deserts are now using advanced solar panels to capture sunlight, turning natural heat into clean electricity that powers entire cities.

Scientific **innovations** play a vital role in this transformation. The development of high-capacity batteries is a perfect example of how modern engineering can solve ancient problems. This massive shift allows industries to store energy that had been wasted for years. By utilizing these green technologies, governments begin to reduce their carbon footprints and understand how protecting the environment is essential for economic stability.

Investing in the planet is not just about saving nature; it is about building a secure foundation for the future. When young explorers and students engage with environmental projects or study green science, they develop a sense of responsibility and purpose. This helps them stay motivated and proactive as they face the challenges of a changing climate. Understanding how to balance human needs with nature's limits is the best way to ensure a bright and healthy world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that
 - a. fossil fuels are the only way to power cities
 - b. desert countries cannot produce electricity
 - c. sustainable energy and innovation are essential for our future
 - d. climate change is a problem that cannot be solved.
2. According to the text, using sunlight in desert countries is a sign of
 - a. wasting natural resources
 - b. ignoring modern technology
 - c. turning natural heat into clean electricity
 - d. a lack of traditional energy.
3. High-capacity batteries are mentioned as an example of
 - a. how modern engineering solves energy storage problems
 - b. a way to increase the use of oil in many aspect of life
 - c. a project that was hidden for many years
 - d. a traditional tool used by ancestors.
4. Engaging with environmental projects helps young people feel a sense of
 - a. hopelessness and fear
 - b. laziness
 - c. responsibility and purpose
 - d. confusion about the past.
5. The word "**innovations**" in the second paragraph refers to
 - a. old habits from the past
 - b. new and clever ideas or inventions
 - c. natural disasters like earthquakes
 - d. the history of fossil fuels.
6. According to the writer, balancing human needs with nature helps us
 - a. stop using all forms of technology
 - b. increase our carbon footprint



- c. ensure a healthy and secure world for the future
d. live without any electricity or source of energy.
7. The passage suggests that fossil fuels
a. are considered a primary cause of the climate crisis
b. are the best source for a sustainable future
c. have no impact on the environment
d. are more important than solar power for students.
8. Studying green science makes students in a changing world.
a. bored and tired
b. motivated and proactive
c. shy and worried
d. aggressive and rude.



Writing



1. Why should you include a photo in a recipe blog?
a. To show what the dish looks like.
b. To make the page not dull or empty.
c. To cover the instructions for privacy.
d. To replace the story.
2. A "short tip" in a recipe blog is
a. a little history of the dish
b. a small helpful idea for cooking
c. a list of all vegetables included in the recipe
d. a list of all shops
3. What should you do at the end of a good recipe blog?
a. End suddenly with no comment.
b. Add a math exercise.
c. End with an invitation.
d. Change the title.
4. The main body of a travel journal includes what you and did.
a. saw
b. refused
c. borrowed
d. predicted
5. Writing about emotions belongs to
a. date & place
b. main body only
c. feelings & thoughts
d. title
6. In a travel journal, sensory details include sounds, smells, and
a. numbers
b. rules
c. colors
d. buses
7. The final part of a travel journal is the
a. introduction
b. date & place
c. reflection/closing
d. heading

1) Write about (120-150) words on one of the following:

a. A Narrative Essay:

"A Voyage to a New World: Imagine you are an explorer discovering a hidden city"

b. An Opinion Essay:

"Should Artificial Intelligence replace humans in dangerous jobs? Give reasons for your answer"

c. A Reflective Paragraph:

Write about how learning about Sustainable Living has changed the way you use resources like water and electricity at home

d. A Descriptive Paragraph:

Describe a Modern Innovation and explain how it has made daily life easier for your community



The Novel



Answer the following questions:

- What lesson does Manolin learn from letting the large fish tire itself?
- How does Santiago's calm reaction to the rough sea reflect wisdom?
- How does teaching give Santiago new purpose?
- What is the significance of the boy sharing the dream?



The old man and the sea

للمصف الأول الثانوى

تحليل الشخصيات وموضوعات القصة.

النص المدرسى مع ترجمته إلى اللغة العربية.

ملخص لكل فصل مع ترجمته إلى اللغة العربية.

أسئلة التفكير النقدى بإجاباتها.

أسئلة كتاب الوزارة بإجاباتها.

أسئلة على كل فصل بدون إجابات.

Struggle and Perseverance

(الصراع والمثابرة)

❏ Santiago fights not just the fish, but also his own weakness, showing that true victory lies in refusing to give up.

يقاتل سانتياجو ليس السمكة فقط، بل ضعفه الداخلي أيضاً، موضحاً أن الانتصار الحقيقي هو عدم الاستسلام أبداً.

Pride and Dignity

(الفخر والكرامة)

❏ Even in defeat, Santiago maintains his honor.

حتى في الهزيمة، يحافظ سانتياجو على كرامته.

❏ Hemingway shows that dignity matters more than material success.

يوضح همنجواي أن الكرامة أهم من النجاح المادي.

Man and Nature

(الإنسان والطبيعة)

❏ The novel explores the relationship between humans and the natural world, portraying both respect and conflict.

تستكشف الرواية علاقة الإنسان بالعالم الطبيعي، حيث تُظهر الاحترام أحياناً والصراع أحياناً أخرى.

Youth and Aging

(الشباب والشيخوخة)

❏ Through Santiago and Manolin, the story contrasts experience and innocence, showing how strength and knowledge can pass from one generation to another.

من خلال شخصيتي سانتياجو ومانولين، تقارن القصة بين الخبرة والبراءة، موضحة كيف يمكن انتقال القوة والمعرفة من جيل إلى آخر.

Dreams and Symbols

(الأحلام والرموز)

❏ Santiago's dreams of lions represent youth, hope, and eternal strength, reminding us that even in old age, the human spirit can remain alive.

تمثل أحلام سانتياجو عن الأسود الشباب، والأمل، والقوة الأبدية، لتذكركنا أن روح الإنسان يمكن أن تبقى حية حتى في الشيخوخة.

The morals

الدروس المستفادة

1. Never give up, even when life is hard.
2. True success is in effort, not in winning.
3. Pride and dignity are more important than money.
4. Nature must be respected, not only used.
5. Friendship and loyalty give strength in life.

- لا تستسلم أبداً، حتى عندما تكون الحياة صعبة
النجاح الحقيقي في الجهد، وليس في الانتصار فقط
الفخر والكرامة أهم من المال
يجب احترام الطبيعة، وليس استغلالها فقط
الصداقة والوفاء يعطيان القوة في الحياة

The Summary



Santiago returns to the village after his great battle with the marlin. His body is exhausted, but his spirit remains strong. The villagers, who once mocked him, now show respect for his courage and perseverance. The skeleton of the marlin floats beside his skiff, symbolizing both his victory and the struggle he endured. Manolin stays by his side, promising never to let Santiago face the sea alone again. Santiago's dreams of lions remind him of his strength and youth.

عاد سانتياجو إلى القرية بعد معركة العظيمة مع المارلين. جسده متعب جداً، لكن روحه ما زالت قوية. القرويون الذين كانوا يسخرون منه من قبل، أصبحوا الآن يحترمون شجاعته وإصراره. هيكل المارلين يطفو بجانب قاربه، مما يرمز إلى انتصاره والصراع الذي تحمله. بقي مانولين بجانبه، ووعد بعدم ترك سانتياجو يواجه البحر وحيداً مرة أخرى. أحلام سانتياجو بالأسود تذكره بقوته وشبابه.

Manolin cares deeply for Santiago and supports him after the battle. He brings food, water, and clean clothes while Santiago rests. Santiago teaches the boy lessons about strength, patience, and the true meaning of courage. The villagers recognize Santiago's bravery, and Manolin promises to fish alongside him from now on. The chapter ends with hope, showing that Santiago's spirit and knowledge will continue through the boy.

يهتم مانولين بسانتياجو بعمق ويدعمه بعد المعركة. يجلب له الطعام والماء والملابس النظيفة بينما يرتاح سانتياجو. يعلم سانتياجو الصبي دروساً عن القوة والصبر والمعنى الحقيقي للشجاعة. يعترف القرويون بشجاعة سانتياجو، ويعد مانولين أن يصطاد بجانبه من الآن فصاعداً. ينتهي الفصل بالأمل، موضحاً أن روح سانتياجو ومعرفته ستستمر من خلال الصبي.

Santiago begins teaching Manolin practical fishing skills. He repairs ropes and lines, shows how to handle hooks, and explains how to understand fish behavior. Manolin practices carefully and learns the value of patience and observation. The marlin's skeleton reminds them of past struggles and lessons. Santiago emphasizes that true strength is tested in difficult challenges, and being stubborn can help overcome obstacles. Their bond grows stronger as they prepare for future adventures at sea.

يبدأ سانتياجو بتعليم مانولين مهارات الصيد العملية. يصلح الجبال والخيوط، ويشرح كيفية التعامل مع الخطاطيف وفهم سلوك الأسماك. يتدرب مانولين بعناية ويتعلم قيمة الصبر والملاحظة. يذكرهم هيكل المارلين بالصراعات والدروس السابقة. يؤكد سانتياجو أن القوة الحقيقية تختبر في التحديات الصعبة، وأن العناد يساعد على التغلب على العقبات. يقوى رابطتهما معاً أثناء التحضير للمغامرات المستقبلية في البحر.

Santiago and Manolin return to the sea together. The boy applies the lessons he learned, catching fish with patience and careful guidance. Santiago teaches him to respect the sea and observe its signs, like the behavior of birds. The day strengthens their relationship and builds confidence in Manolin. Santiago reminds the boy that the sea is generous but also tests them, and the true secret is to listen and learn from it.

يعود سانتياجو ومانولين إلى البحر معاً. يطبق الصبي الدروس التي تعلمها، ويصطاد الأسماك بالصبر والإرشاد الدقيق. يعلم سانتياجو الصبي احترام البحر ومراقبة علاماته، مثل سلوك الطيور. يعزز اليوم علاقتهما ويزيد ثقة مانولين بنفسه. يذكر سانتياجو الصبي بأن البحر كريم لكنه يختبرهم أيضاً، والسر الحقيقي هو الاستماع والتعلم منه.

Santiago tells Manolin about the lions he saw in Africa as a young man. They symbolize youth, strength, and freedom. During the next fishing trip, Manolin applies Santiago's advice, showing patience and skill. Santiago guides him through challenges and praises his efforts. The villagers notice Santiago's renewed spirit and see him as a teacher and role model. The lions in Santiago's dream now include the boy, symbolizing the passing of courage, knowledge, and hope.

يخبر سانتياجو مانولين عن الأسود التي رآها في أفريقيا عندما كان شاباً. ترمز هذه الأسود إلى الشباب والقوة والحرية. خلال رحلة الصيد التالية، يطبق مانولين نصائح سانتياجو، مظهراً الصبر والمهارة. يرشده سانتياجو خلال التحديات ويثني على جهوده. يلاحظ القرويون روح سانتياجو المتجددة ويرونه كمعلم وقادة. تشمل أحلام الأسود الآن الصبي أيضاً، مما يرمز إلى انتقال الشجاعة والمعرفة والأمل.

Santiago and Manolin continue fishing together, applying all the lessons learned. Santiago teaches the boy about life, courage, patience, humility, and perseverance. The boy grows skilled and confident, showing his courage and determination. The villagers respect both Santiago and Manolin, recognizing their dignity and strength. The chapter ends with hope and renewal, symbolized by Santiago's lions in his dreams. The story concludes with the idea that endings can be new beginnings, as the boy carries forward Santiago's teachings and spirit.

يستمر سانتياجو ومانولين في الصيد معاً، مطبقين كل الدروس التي تعلموها. يعلم سانتياجو الصبي عن الحياة والشجاعة والصبر والتواضع والمثابرة. ينمو الصبي ماهراً واثقاً، مظهراً شجاعته وعزمته. يحترم القرويون كل من سانتياجو ومانولين، معترفين بكرامتهما وقوتهما. ينتهي الفصل بالأمل والتجديد، ويرمز لذلك أحلام سانتياجو بالأسود. تختم القصة بفكرة أن النهايات يمكن أن تكون بدايات جديدة، حيث ينقل الصبي دروس سانتياجو وروحه إلى المستقبل.

The Return Home

Key Vocabulary

ache (v)	يتألم / يؤلم	tragic (adj)	مأساوي	hut (n)	كوخ
skiff (n)	قارب صغير	harbor (n)	ميناء	giant (adj)	ضخم / عملاق
swollen (adj)	متورم	dock (n)	رصيف الميناء	pride (n)	فخر
bent (adj)	منحني / مثني	tremble (v)	يرتجف	dignity (n)	كرامة
exhaustion (n)	إرهاق شديد	whisper (v)	يهمس	courage (n)	شجاعة
skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمي	amazement (n)	دهشة / إعجاب	promise (n/v)	وعد / يوعد
mast (n)	سارية السفينة	shoreline (n)	شاطئ	unbroken (adj)	غير مكسور / صامد
steadily (adv)	بثبات / بشكل منتظم	relief (n)	راحة / ارتياح	torn (adj)	ممزق
companion (n)	رفيق	sword (n)	سيف	bleeding (adj)	نازف
victorious (adj)	منتصر	complaint (n)	شكوى	proof (n)	دليل
defeated (adj)	مهزوم	flesh (n)	لحم	pity (v)	يشفق / يشعر بالشفقة

Summary

In this chapter, Santiago returns home after a long and painful journey at sea. He is extremely tired, but his boat moves steadily toward the shore. The skeleton of the great marlin floats beside him, showing the size of his great struggle. When the fishermen see it, they respect him because the skeleton speaks louder than words. Santiago reaches his hut and falls into a deep sleep. Manolin comes and feels sad to see the old man so weak, and he promises never to let him fish alone again. The villagers admire the skeleton, while some feel pity for the old man. Santiago knows in his heart that he fought with honor and dignity. His dream of lions shows that his spirit is still strong and hopeful.

في هذا الفصل، يعود سانتياجو إلى بيته بعد رحلة طويلة ومتعبة في البحر. ورغم إرهاقه الشديد، يتحرك قاربه بثبات نحو الشاطئ. يطفو هيكل سمكة المارلين بجانبه، مما يوضح حجم معركته الكبيرة. عندما يراه الصيادون، يحترمون لأنه الهيكل يتحدث بأفعال أقوى من الكلمات. يصل سانتياجو إلى كوخه وينام نوماً عميقاً. يأتي مانولين ويحزن عندما يراه ضعيفاً، ويوعده ألا يذهب للصيد وحده مرة أخرى. بعض القرويين يعجبون بالهيكل، بينما يشعر آخرون بالشفقة. في قلبه، يعلم سانتياجو أنه قاتل بشرف وكرامة، وحلمه بالأسود يدل على أن روحه ما زالت قوية ومليئة بالأمل.

The night was long and heavy. Santiago's body ached with every movement, his hands cut and swollen, his back bent with exhaustion. But his small skiff moved slowly and steadily toward the coast. The skeleton of the great marlin floated beside him, white and shining under the moon.

كانت الليلة طويلة وثقيلة. جسد سانتياجو يتألم مع كل حركة، ويدها مقطوعتان ومتورمتان، وظهره مثني من التعب. لكن قاربه الصغير تحرك ببطء وثبتت نحو الساحل. هيكل المارلين العظيم يطفو بجانبه، أبيض ومتألّق تحت ضوء القمر.

The sea was quiet now, as if it had taken all it wanted. Santiago sat in silence, the sound of water against the boat was his only companion. He felt both victorious and defeated.

كان البحر هادئاً الآن، كما لو أنه أخذ كل ما أراد. جلس سانتياجو في صمت، وكان صوت المياه على القارب رفيقه الوحيد. شعر بأنه منتصر وفي الوقت نفسه مهزوم.

At dawn, the shoreline of his village appeared. The hills rose gently in the morning light, and the smell of land reached him. The old man's heart filled with relief. He had made it back.

عند الفجر، ظهرت شواطئ قريته. ارتفعت التلال بلطف تحت ضوء الصباح، ووصلته رائحة الأرض. امتلأ قلب العجوز بالراحة، فقد عاد أخيراً.

The marlin's skeleton stretched out far beyond the skiff, like the mast of a great ship. Its head and long sword rose high, an image both proud and tragic. Fisherman sleeping in their huts would soon wake and see it.

امتد هيكل المارلين بعيداً خلف القارب، مثل صارية سفينة عظيمة. ارتفع رأسه وسيفه الطويل عالياً صورة تجمع بين الكبرياء والمأساوية. سيستيقظ الصيادون النائمون في أكواخهم قريباً ليروه.

As Santiago reached the small harbor, a few early fishermen noticed the strange sight. They stared in silence as the old man tied his boat to the dock. No one spoke; the skeleton of the marlin spoke louder than words.

عندما وصل سانتياجو إلى الميناء الصغير، لاحظ بعض الصيادين المبكرين المشهد الغريب. حدقوا في صمت بينما كان العجوز يربط قاربه على الرصيف. لم يتحدث أحد؛ كان هيكل المارلين يتحدث بصوت أعلى من الكلمات.

Santiago stood slowly. His legs trembled, and his strength was nearly gone. He looked at the marlin one last time. "You were worth everything," he whispered.

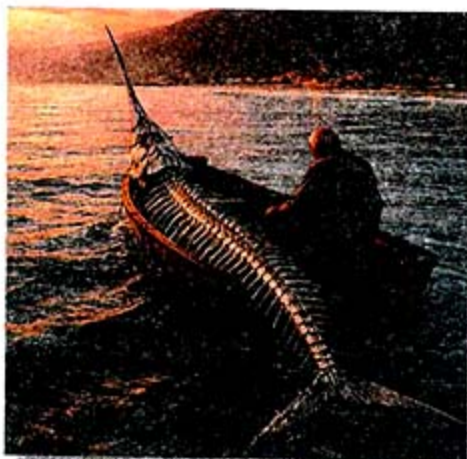
وقف سانتياجو ببطء. ارتجفت ساقيه، وكانت قوته على وشك النفاد. نظر إلى المارلين للمرة الأخيرة وهمس: "كنت تستحق كل شيء."

Step by step, he climbed the shore, carrying his mast on his shoulders. It was heavy, but he bore it without complaint. Villagers watched quietly as he passed, some with respect, others with amazement. They did not laugh at him anymore.

خطوة بخطوة، صعد الشاطئ حمالاً صاريته على كتفيه. كانت ثقيلة، لكنه تحملها بصمت دون شكوى. شاهد القرويون بهدوء وهو يمر، بعضهم باحترام، والبعض بدهشة. لم يسخروا منه بعد الآن.

At last, he reached his little hut. He placed the mast against the wall, entered, and lay down on his bed. He was too tired to eat, too tired even to think. His eyes closed, and he fell into a deep sleep.

وأخيراً، وصل إلى كوخه الصغير. وضع السارية بجانب الحائط، دخل واستلقى على سريره. كان متعباً جداً لدرجة أنه لم يستطع الأكل، وحتى التفكير كان صعباً عليه. أغمض عينيه، وغرق في نوم عميق.



Meanwhile, the fishermen gathered at the shore. They measured the marlin's skeleton—eighteen feet from nose to tail. It was the largest fish anyone in the village had ever seen.

وفي الوقت نفسه، تجمع الصيادون على الشاطئ. قاموا بقياس هيكل المارلين —ثمانية عشر قدماً من الأنف حتى الذيل. كان أكبر سمكة رأتها أي عين في القرية على الإطلاق.

Tourists who visited the cafe nearby asked about the giant bones, and the fishermen explained with pride, "It was the old man. He caught it alone."

سأل السياح الذين زاروا المقهى القريب عن هذه العظام العملاقة، وأوضح الصيادون بفخر: "كان العجوز. لقد اصطادها بمفرده".

The boy, Manolin, came running to Santiago's hut. He found the old man sleeping, his face calm but his hands torn and bleeding. The boy began to cry. "He should not have been alone," he whispered. "Never again."

ركض الصبي، مانولين، إلى كوخ سانتياجو. وجد العجوز نائماً، وجهه هادئ لكن يديه ممزقتين ونازفتين. بدأ الصبي في البكاء. همس: "لم يكن يجب أن يكون وحيداً. أبداً مرة أخرى".



When Santiago finally woke, the boy was at his side with food and water. "Rest, old man," Manolin said. "You have done enough. Tomorrow I will fish with you again."

عندما استيقظ سانتياجو أخيراً، كان الصبي بجانبه ومعه الطعام والماء. قال مانولين: "ارتاح يا عجوز، لقد فعلت ما يكفي. غداً سأصطاد معك مرة أخرى".

Santiago smiled faintly. "We must make our plans," he said. His voice was weak but steady. ابتسم سانتياجو بخفة. قال: "يجب أن نضع خططنا." كان صوته ضعيفاً لكنه ثابت.

The boy nodded eagerly. "I will bring the nets, the lines, everything we need. You will not go alone anymore." أومأ الصبي بحماس. قال: "سأحضر الشباك والخيوط وكل ما نحتاجه. لن تذهب وحيداً بعد الآن."

Outside, the skeleton of the marlin lay as proof of Santiago's great battle. Some people admired it with wonder; others pitied the old man for losing so much of the flesh to sharks. But Santiago did not care what they thought.

في الخارج، كان هيكل المارلين ملقى كدليل على معركة سانتياجو العظيمة. أعجب البعض به بدهشة؛ بينما شفق البعض الآخر على العجوز لفقده الكثير من اللحم بسبب القروش. لكن سانتياجو لم يهتم بما يظنه الآخرون.

In his heart, he knew he had fought with all his strength and with honor. The marlin was gone, yet it had given him something more valuable than meat to sell: dignity, courage, and the knowledge that he could still fight, even at the edge of old age.

في قلبه، كان يعلم أنه قد قاتل بكل قوته وبشرف. المارلين قد رحل، لكنه منحه شيئاً أكثر قيمة من اللحم للبيع: الكرامة، والشجاعة، والمعرفة أنه لا يزال قادراً على القتال، حتى في نهاية العمر.

That night, as Santiago slept again, he dreamed once more of lions playing freely on the beaches of Africa. They were strong, young, and full of life. In his dreams, he was young too, and the sea stretched before him with endless promise.

تلك الليلة، بينما كان سانتياجو ينام مرة أخرى، حلم مرة أخرى بالأسود وهي تلعب بحرية على شواطئ أفريقيا. كانت قوية، شابة ومليئة بالحياة. في أحلامه، كان هو أيضاً شاباً، وكان البحر أمامه ممتداً بوعود لا نهاية له.

The battle was over, but the spirit of the old man remained unbroken.



انتهت المعركة، لكن روح العجوز بقيت صامدة ولم تنكسر.

Setbook Questions & Answers



- Why did the villagers show respect when Santiago returned?
لماذا أظهر القرويون الاحترام عندما عاد سانتياجو؟
Because the marlin's skeleton showed his great struggle and success.
لأن هيكل السمكة أظهر كبر معركته ونجاحه.
- How did Santiago feel when he saw the marlin's skeleton?
كيف شعر سانتياجو عندما رأى هيكل السمكة؟
He felt both proud and tired at the same time.
شعر بالفخر والتعب في الوقت نفسه.
- Why did Manolin cry when he saw Santiago sleeping?
لماذا بكى مانولين عندما رأى سانتياجو نائمًا؟
Because he felt sorry to see the old man very weak and hurt.
لأنه حزن لرؤية الرجل العجوز ضعيفًا ومصابًا.
- What promise did Manolin make to Santiago?
ما الوعد الذي قطعه مانولين لسانتياجو؟
He promised to fish with him and never let him go alone again.
وعد أنه يصيد معه وألا يتركه يذهب وحده مرة أخرى.
- What does Santiago's dream of lions mean?
ماذا يعني حلم سانتياجو بالأسود؟
It means he still has strength, hope, and a strong spirit.
يعني أنه ما زال يملك القوة والأمل وروحًا قوية.

Critical Thinking Questions



- In your opinion, why did the villagers become silent when they saw the skeleton?
في رأيك، لماذا إنهم القرويون الصمت عندما رأوا الهيكل؟
Because they felt respect and surprise.
لأنهم شعروا بالاحترام والدهشة.
- What do you think the marlin's skeleton symbolizes?
برأيك، ماذا يرمز هيكل سمكة المارلين؟
It symbolizes great effort and victory.
يرمز إلى الجهد الكبير والانتصار.
- From your point of view, why didn't Santiago complain about his pain?
من وجهة نظرك، لماذا لم يشتكي سانتياجو من ألمه؟
Because he is patient and strong.
لأنه صبور وقوي.
- In your opinion, why did Manolin cry when he saw Santiago's hands?
في رأيك، لماذا بكى مانولين عندما رأى يدي سانتياجو؟
Because he felt worried and sad for him.
لأنه شعر بالقلق والحزن عليه.
- What do you think made the fishermen respect Santiago again?
برأيك، ما الذي جعل الصيادين يحترمون سانتياجو مرة أخرى؟
Seeing the huge skeleton.
رؤية الهيكل الضخم.
- From your point of view, why is the sea described as quiet after the battle?
من وجهة نظرك، لماذا وُصف البحر بالهدوء بعد المعركة؟
Because the struggle was finished.
لأن الصراع انتهى.
- In your opinion, why did Santiago whisper to the marlin?
في رأيك، لماذا همس سانتياجو للسمكة؟
To show respect and gratitude.
ليظهر الاحترام والامتنان.
- What do you think the villagers learned from Santiago's return?
برأيك، ماذا تعلم القرويون من عودة سانتياجو؟
They learned to respect courage.
تعلموا احترام الشجاعة.

14. From your point of view, why is dignity more important than money in the story?

من وجهة نظرك، لماذا الكرامة أهم من المال في القصة؟

Because it gives true pride and honor.

لأنها تمنح فخراً وشرفاً حقيقيين

15. In your opinion, why did Manolin promise not to leave Santiago alone again?

في رأيك، لماذا وعد مانولين ألا يترك سانتياجو وحده مرة أخرى؟

Because he cares about his safety.

لأنه يهتم بسلامته

16. What do you think the dream of lions shows about Santiago's personality?

برأيك، ماذا يوضح حلم الأسود عن شخصية سانتياجو؟

He is hopeful and strong inside.

هو متفائل وقوي من الداخل

17. From your point of view, why did some people admire the skeleton while others pitied Santiago?

من وجهة نظرك، لماذا أعجب بعض الناس بالسkeleton بينما أشفق آخرون على سانتياجو؟

People see success differently.

الناس ينظرون إلى النجاح بشكل مختلف

18. In your opinion, why didn't Santiago care about people's opinions?

في رأيك، لماذا لم يهتم سانتياجو بآراء الناس؟

He was satisfied with his effort.

كان راضياً عن جهده

19. What do you think carrying the mast teaches us?

برأيك، ماذا يعلمنا حمل الصاري؟

It teaches patience and endurance.

يعلمنا الصبر والتحمل

20. From your point of view, why is teamwork important at the end of the chapter?

من وجهة نظرك، لماذا العمل الجماعي مهم في نهاية الفصل؟

It gives support and safety.

يمنح الدعم والأمان

Chapter 7 General Exercises

1. In your opinion, why did the tourists become interested in the skeleton?
2. What do you think the calm village scene adds to the story?
3. From your point of view, why is silence powerful in this chapter?
4. In your opinion, why does the writer focus on Santiago's tired body?
5. What do you think the marlin represents in Santiago's life?
6. From your point of view, why is hope important for Santiago?
7. In your opinion, why did the villagers change their attitude toward Santiago?
8. What do you think the final sentence teaches the reader?
9. From your point of view, why was Manolin loyal to Santiago?
10. In your opinion, why is this chapter called "The Return Home"?

